

INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification: C07K 16/00, A61K 39/395, C07K 16/28, C12N 5/10, C12N 15/13, C12N 15/85, G01N 33/577, G01N 33/68

A2 (11) International Publication Number: (43) International Publication Date:

WO 00/42072

20 July 2000 (20.07.2000)

(21) International Application Number:

PCT/US00/00973

Published

(22) International Filing Date:

14 January 2000 (14.01.2000)

(30) Priority Data:

60/116,023

15 January 1999 (15.01.1999) US

(60) Parent Application or Grant

GENENTECH, INC. [/]; (). PRESTA, Leonard, G. [/]; (). LEE, Wendy, M.; ().

(54) Title: POLYPEPTIDE VARIANTS WITH ALTERED EFFECTOR FUNCTION

(54) Titre: VARIANTS POLYPEPTIDIQUES AYANT UNE FONCTION EFFECTRICE ALTEREE

(57) Abstract

The present invention concerns polypeptides comprising a variant Fc region. More particularly, the present invention concerns Fc region-containing polypeptides that have altered effector function as a consequence of one or more amino acid modifications in the Fc region thereof.

(57) Abrégé

La présente invention concerne des polypeptides comprenant un fragment Fc variant. L'invention concerne plus particulièrement des polypeptides à fragment Fc comportant une fonction effectrice altérée résultant d'une ou plusieurs modifications des acides aminés dans ledit fragment Fc.

> ATTORNEY DOCKET NUMBER: 10271-027-999 SERIAL NUMBER: 10/020,354

REFERENCE: DQ



WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION International Bureau



INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

| | | (11) International Publication Number: WO 00/4207 |
|--|-----------|---|
| C07K 16/00, A61K 39/395, C12N 15/13, 15/85, 5/10, G01N 33/68, 33/577 // C07K 16/28 | A2 | (43) International Publication Date: 20 July 2000 (20.07.0 |
| (21) International Application Number: PCT/US (22) International Filing Date: 14 January 2000 ((30) Priority Data: 60/116,023 15 January 1999 (15.01.99) (71) Applicant: GENENTECH, INC. [US/US]; 1 DNA W. San Francisco, CA 94080–4990 (US). (72) Inventor: PRESTA, Leonard, G.; 1900 Gough Stre San Francisco, CA 94109 (US). (74) Agents: LEE, Wendy, M. et al.; Genentech, Inc., 1 Di South San Francisco, CA 94080–4990 (US). | Uay, Sour | BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, E ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, J KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, M MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, R SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, TZ, UA, U UZ, VN, YU, ZA, ZW, ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, L MW, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, A BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, B CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, M NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, G. GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG). |
| (54) Title: POLYPEPTIDE VARIANTS WITH ALTERE | D EFFI | CTOR FUNCTION |
| The present invention concerns polypeptides compri- region-containing polypeptides that have altered effector region thereof. | sing a v | variant Fc region. More particularly, the present invention concerns I as a consequence of one or more amino acid modifications in the I |

FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

| AL | Albania | ES | Spain | LS | Lesotho | SI | Slovenia |
|----|--------------------------|----|---------------------|-----|-----------------------|-----------|--------------------------|
| AM | Annenia | FI | Finland | LT | Lithuania | SK | Slovakia |
| ΑT | Austria | FR | France | LU | Luxembourg | SN | Senegal |
| ΑU | Australia | GA | Gabon | LV | Letvia | SZ | Swaziland |
| AZ | ∧zerbaljan | GB | United Kingdom | MC | Monaco | TD | Chad |
| BA | Bosnia and Herzegovina | GE | Georgia | MD | Republic of Moldova | TG | Тодо |
| BB | Barbados | GH | Chana | MG | Madagascar | TJ | Tajikistan |
| BE | Belgium | GN | Guinea | MK | The farmer Yugoslav | TM | Turkmenistan |
| BF | Burkina Faso | GR | Greece | | Republic of Macedonia | TR | Turkey |
| BG | Bulgaria | HU | Hungary | ML | Mali | TT | Trinidad and Tobago |
| BJ | Benin | IE | Ireland | MIN | Mongolia | UA | Ukraine |
| BR | Brazil | IL | Israel | MR | Mauritania | UG | Uganda |
| 8Y | Belarus | IS | Iceland | MW | Malawi | US | United States of America |
| CA | Canada | IT | Italy | MX | Mexico | UZ | Uzbekistan |
| CF | Central African Republic | JP | Japan | NE | Niger | VN | Vict Nam |
| CG | Congo | KE | Kenya | NL | Netherlands | YU | Yugoslavia |
| CH | Switzerland | KG | Kyrgyzstan | NO | Norway | zw | Zimbabwe |
| CI | Côte d'Ivoire | KP | Democratic People's | NZ | New Zealand | | |
| CM | Cameroon | | Republic of Korea | PL | Poland | | |
| CN | China | KR | Republic of Korea | PT | Portugal | | |
| CU | Cuba | KZ | Kazakstan | кo | Romania | | |
| CZ | Czech Republic | LC | Saint Lucia | RU | Russian Pederation | | |
| DE | Germany | L | Liechtenstein | SD | Sudan | | |
| DK | Denmark | LK | Sri Lanka | SE | Sweden | | |
| KE | Estonia | LR | Liberia | SG | Singapore | | |

2010 to the second

MAN TOWN

Description

5

POLYPEPTIDE VARIANTS WITH ALTERED EFFECTOR FUNCTION **BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION**

Field of the Invention

10

The present invention concerns polypeptides comprising a variant Fc region. More particularly, the present invention concerns Fc region-containing polypeptides that have altered effector function as a consequence of one or more amino acid modifications in the Fc region thereof.

antibodies are usually heterotetrameric glycoproteins of about 150,000 daltons, composed of two

Antibodies are proteins which exhibit binding specificity to a specific antigen. Native

15

Description of Related Art

20

identical light (L) chains and two identical heavy (H) chains. Each light chain is linked to a heavy chain by one covalent disulfide bond, while the number of disulfide linkages varies between the heavy chains of different immunoglobulin isotypes. Each heavy and light chain also has regularly spaced intrachain disulfide bridges. Each heavy chain has at one end a variable domain (VH) followed by a number of constant domains. Each light chain has a variable domain at one end (V_L) and a constant domain at its other end; the constant domain of the light chain is aligned with the first constant domain of the heavy chain, and the light chain variable domain is aligned with

25

the variable domain of the heavy chain. Particular amino acid residues are believed to form an interface between the light and heavy chain variable domains.

30

20

35

25

35

10

15

40

45

30

50

The term "variable" refers to the fact that certain portions of the variable domains differ extensively in sequence among antibodies and are responsible for the binding specificity of each particular antibody for its particular antigen. However, the variability is not evenly distributed through the variable domains of antibodies. It is concentrated in three segments called complementarity determining regions (CDRs) both in the light chain and the heavy chain variable domains. The more highly conserved portions of the variable domains are called the framework regions (FRs). The variable domains of native heavy and light chains each comprise four FRs, largely adopting a β-sheet configuration, connected by three CDRs, which form loops connecting, and in some cases forming part of, the β-sheet structure. The CDRs in each chain are held together in close proximity by the FRs and, with the CDRs from the other chain, contribute to the formation of the antigen binding site of antibodies (see Kabat et al., Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest, 5th Ed. Public Health Service, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD. (1991)).

The constant domains are not involved directly in binding an antibody to an antigen, but exhibit various effector functions. Depending on the amino acid sequence of the constant region of their heavy chains, antibodies or immunoglobulins can be assigned to different classes. There

are five major classes of immunoglobulins: IgA, IgD, IgE, IgG and IgM, and several of these may be further divided into subclasses (isotypes), e.g. IgG1, IgG2, IgG3, and IgG4; IgA1 and IgA2. The heavy chain constant regions that correspond to the different classes of immunoglobulins are called α , δ , ϵ , γ , and μ , respectively. Of the various human immunoglobulin classes, only human IgG1, IgG2, IgG3 and IgM are known to activate complement; and human IgG1 and IgG3 mediate ADCC more effectively than IgG2 and IgG4.

A schematic representation of the native IgG1 structure is shown In Fig. 1, where the various portions of the native antibody molecule are indicated. Papain digestion of antibodies produces two identical antigen binding fragments, called Fab fragments, each with a single antigen binding site, and a residual "Fc" fragment, whose name reflects its ability to crystallize readily. The crystal structure of the human IgG Fc region has been determined (Deisenhofer, **Biochemistry** 20:2361-2370 (1981)). In human IgG molecules, the Fc region is generated by papain cleavage N-terminal to Cys 226. The Fc region is central to the effector functions of antibodies.

The effector functions mediated by the antibody Fc region can be divided into two categories: (1) effector functions that operate after the binding of antibody to an antigen (these functions involve the participation of the complement cascade or Fc receptor (FcR)-bearing cells); and (2) effector functions that operate independently of antigen binding (these functions confer persistence in the circulation and the ability to be transferred across cellular barriers by transcytosis). Ward and Ghetie, *Therapeutic Immunology* 2:77-94 (1995).

While binding of an antibody to the requisite antigen has a neutralizing effect that might prevent the binding of a foreign antigen to its endogenous target (e.g. receptor or ligand), binding alone may not remove the foreign antigen. To be efficient in removing and/or destructing foreign antigens, an antibody should be endowed with both high affinity binding to its antigen, and

efficient effector functions.

Fc receptor (FcR) blnding

The interaction of antibodies and antibody-antigen complexes with cells of the immune system effects a variety of responses, including antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC) and complement dependent cytotoxicity (CDC) (reviewed in Daëron, *Annu. Rev. Immunol.* 15:203-234 (1997); Ward and Ghetie, *Therapeutic Immunol.* 2:77-94 (1995); as well as Ravetch and Kinet, *Annu. Rev. Immunol.* 9:457-492 (1991)).

Several antibody effector functions are mediated by Fc receptors (FcRs), which bind the Fc region of an antibody. FcRs are defined by their specificity for immunoglobulin isotypes; Fc receptors for IgG antibodies are referred to as FcyR, for IgE as FccR, for IgA as FccR and so on. Three subclasses of FcyR have been identified: FcyRI (CD64), FcyRII (CD32) and FcyRIII (CD16).

Because each FcyR subclass is encoded by two or three genes, and alternative RNA spicing leads to multiple transcripts, a broad diversity in FcyR isoforms exists. The three genes encoding the FcyRI subclass (FcyRIA, FcyRIB and FcyRIC) are clustered in region 1q21.1 of the long arm of chromosome 1; the genes encoding FcyRII isoforms (FcyRIIA, FcyRIIB and FcyRIIC) and the two genes encoding FcyRIII (FcyRIIIA and FcyRIIIB) are all clustered in region 1q22. These different FcR subtypes are expressed on different cell types (reviewed in Ravetch and Kinet, *Annu. Rev. Immunol.* 9:457-492 (1991)). For example, in humans, FcyRIIIB is found only on neutrophils, whereas FcyRIIIA is found on macrophages, monocytes, natural killer (NK) cells, and a subpopulation of T-cells. Notably, FcyRIIIA is the only FcR present on NK cells, one of the cell types implicated in ADCC.

FcγRI, FcγRII and FcγRIII are immunoglobulin superfamily (IgSF) receptors; FcγRI has three IgSF domains in its extracellular domain, while FcγRII and FcγRIII have only two IgSF domains in their extracellular domains.

Another type of Fc receptor is the neonatal Fc receptor (FcRn). FcRn is structurally similar to major histocompatibility complex (MHC) and consists of an α -chain noncovalently bound to β 2-microglobulin.

The binding site on human and murine antibodies for FcγR have been previously mapped to the so-called "lower hinge region" consisting of residues 233-239 (EU index numbering as in Kabat *et al.*, Sequences *of Proteins of Immunological Interest*, 5th Ed. Public Health Service, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD. (1991)). Woof *et al. Molec. Immunol*. 23:319-330 (1986); Duncan *et al. Nature* 332:563 (1988); Canfield and Morrison, *J. Exp. Med*. 173:1483-1491 (1991); Chappel *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci USA* 88:9036-9040 (1991). Of residues 233-239, P238 and S239 have been cited as possibly being involved in binding, but these two residues have never been evaluated by substitution or deletion.

Other previously cited areas possibly involved in binding to FcyR are: G316-K338 (human IgG) for human FcyRI (by sequence comparison only; no substitution mutants were evaluated) (Woof et al. Molec. Immunol. 23:319-330 (1986)); K274-R301 (human IgG1) for human FcyRIII (based on peptides) (Sarmay et al. Molec. Immunol. 21:43-51 (1984)); Y407-R416 (human IgG) for human FcyRIII (based on peptides) (Gergely et al. Blochem. Soc. Trans. 12:739-743 (1984)); as well as N297 and E318 (murine IgG2b) for murine FcyRII (Lund et al., Molec. Immunol., 20:75.55 (1984))

29:53-59 (1992)).

Pro331 in IgG3 was changed to Ser, and the affinity of this variant to target cells analyzed. The affinity was found to be six-fold lower than that of unmutated IgG3, indicating the involvement of Pro331 in FcyRI binding. Morrison et al., Immunologist, 2:119-124 (1994); and Canfield and Morrison, J. Exp. Med. 173:1483-91 (1991).

C1q binding

C1q and two serine proteases, C1r and C1s, form the complex C1, the first component of the complement dependent cytotoxicity (CDC) pathway. C1q is a hexavalent molecule with a molecular weight of approximately 460,000 and a structure likened to a bouquet of tulips in which six collagenous "stalks" are connected to six globular head regions. Burton and Woof, *Advances in Immunol.* 51:1-84 (1992). To activate the complement cascade, it is necessary for C1q to bind to at least two molecules of IgG1, IgG2, or IgG3 (the consensus is that IgG4 does not activate complement), but only one molecule of IgM, attached to the antigenic target. Ward and Ghetie, *Therapeutic Immunology* 2:77-94 (1995) at page 80.

Based upon the results of chemical modifications and crystallographic studies, Burton et al. (Nature, 288:338-344 (1980)) proposed that the binding site for the complement subcomponent C1q on IgG involves the last two (C-terminal) β-strands of the CH2 domain. Burton later suggested (Molec. Immunol., 22(3):161-206 (1985)) that the region comprising amino acid residues 318 to 337 might be involved in complement fixation.

Duncan and Winter (*Nature* 332:738-40 (1988)), using site directed mutagenesis, reported that Glu318, Lys320 and Lys322 form the binding site to C1q. The data of Duncan and Winter were generated by testing the binding of a mouse IgG2b isotype to guinea pig C1q. The role of Glu318, Lys320 and Lys322 residues in the binding of C1q was confirmed by the ability of a short synthetic peptide containing these residues to inhibit complement mediated tysls. Similar results are disclosed in U.S. Patent No. 5,648,260 issued on July 15, 1997, and U.S. Patent No. 5,624,821 issued on April 29, 1997.

The residue Pro331 has been implicated in C1q binding by analysis of the ability of human IgG subclasses to carry out complement mediated cell lysis. Mutation of Ser331 to Pro331 in IgG4 conferred the ability to activate complement. (Tao et al., J. Exp. Med., 178:661-667 (1993); Brekke et al., Eur. J. Immunol., 24:2542-47 (1994)).

From the comparison of the data of the Winter group, and the Tao et al. and Brekke et al. papers, Ward and Ghetie concluded in their review article that there are at least two different regions involved in the binding of C1q: one on the β -strand of the CH2 domain bearing the Giu318, Lys320 and Lys322 residues, and the other on a turn located in close proximity to the

Other reports suggested that human IgG1 residues Leu235, and Gly237, located in the lower hinge region, play a critical role in complement fixation and activation. Xu et al., Immunol. 150:152A (Abstract) (1993). WO94/29351 published December 22, 1994 reports that amino acid residues necessary for C1q and FcR binding of human IgG1 are located in the N-terminal region

same β-strand, and containing a key amino acid residue at position 331.

of the CH2 domain, i.e. residues 231 to 238.

It has further been proposed that the ability of IgG to bind C1q and activate the complement cascade also depends on the presence, absence, or modification of the carbohydrate moiety positioned between the two CH2 domains (which is normally anchored at Asn297). Ward and Ghetie, *Therapeutic Immunology* 2:77-94 (1995) at page 81.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention provides a variant of a parent polypeptide comprising an Fc region, which variant mediates antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC) in the presence of human effector cells more effectively, or binds an Fc gamma receptor (FcγR) with better affinity, than the parent polypeptide and comprises at least one amino acid modification in the Fc region. The polypeptide variant may, for example, comprise an antibody or an immunoadhesin. The Fc region of the parent polypeptide preferably comprises a human Fc region; e.g., a human IgG1, IgG2, IgG3 or IgG4 Fc region. The polypeptide variant preferably comprises an amino acid modification (e.g. a substitution) at any one or more of amino acid positions 256, 290, 298, 312, 326, 330, 333, 334, 360, 378 or 430 of the Fc region, wherein the numbering of the residues in the Fc region is that of the EU index as In Kabat.

In addition, the invention provides a polypeptide comprising a variant Fc region with altered Fc gamma receptor (FcγR) binding affinity, which polypeptide comprises an amino acid modification at any one or more of amino acid positions 238, 239, 248, 249, 252, 254, 255, 256, 258, 265, 267, 268, 269, 270, 272, 276, 278, 280, 283, 285, 286, 289, 290, 292, 293, 294, 295, 296, 298, 301, 303, 305, 307, 309, 312, 315, 320, 322, 324, 326, 327, 329, 330, 331, 333, 334, 335, 337, 338, 340, 360, 373, 376, 378, 382, 388, 389, 398, 414, 416, 419, 430, 434, 435, 437, 438 or 439 of the Fc region, wherein the numbering of the residues in the Fc region is that of the EU Index as in Kabat. The variant Fc region preferably comprises a variant human IgG Fc region, e.g., a variant human IgG1, IgG2, IgG3 or IgG4 Fc region. In this respect, it is noted that, in the work in the above-cited art where the parent polypeptide had a non-human murine Fc region, different residues from those identified herein were thought to impact FcR binding. For example, in the murine IgG2b/murine FcγRII system, IgG E318 was found to be important for binding (Lund et al. Molec. Immunol. 27(1):53-59 (1992)), whereas E318A had no effect in the human IgG/human FcγRII system (Table 6 below).

In one embodiment, the polypeptide variant with altered FcγR binding activity displays reduced binding to an FcγR and comprises an amino acid modification at any one or more of amino acid positions 238, 239, 248, 249, 252, 254, 265, 268, 269, 270, 272, 278, 289, 292, 293, 294, 295, 296, 298, 301, 303, 322, 324, 327, 329, 333, 335, 338, 340, 373, 376, 382, 388, 389, 414, 416, 419, 434, 435, 437, 438 or 439 of the Fc region, wherein the numbering of the residues in the Fc region is that of the EU index as in Kabat.

5

For example, the polypeptide variant may display reduced binding to an FcγRI and comprise an amino acid modification at any one or more of amino acid positions 238, 265, 269, 270, 327 or 329 of the Fc region, wherein the numbering of the residues in the Fc region is that of the EU index as in Kabat.

10

5

20

25

30

The polypeptide variant may display reduced binding to an FcyRII and comprise an amino acid modification at any one or more of amino acid positions 238, 265, 269, 270, 292, 294, 295, 298, 303, 324, 327, 329, 333, 335, 338, 373, 376, 414, 416, 419, 435, 438 or 439 of the Fc region, wherein the numbering of the residues in the Fc region is that of the EU index as in Kabat.

15

The polypeptide variant of interest may display reduced binding to an Fc γ RIII and comprise an amino acid modification at one or more of amino acid positions 238, 239, 248, 249, 252, 254, 265, 268, 269, 270, 272, 278, 289, 293, 294, 295, 296, 301, 303, 322, 327, 329, 338, 340, 373, 376, 382, 388, 389, 416, 434, 435 or 437 of the Fc region, wherein the numbering of the residues in the Fc region is that of the EU index as in Kabat.

20

In another embodiment, the polypeptide variant with altered Fc γ R binding affinity displays improved binding to the Fc γ R and comprises an amino acid modification at any one or more of amino acid positions 255, 256, 258, 267, 268, 272, 276, 280, 283, 285, 286, 290, 298, 301, 305, 307, 309, 312, 315, 320, 322, 326, 330, 331, 333, 334, 337, 340, 360, 378, 398 or 430 of the Fc region, wherein the numbering of the residues in the Fc region is that of the EU index as in Kabat.

25

For example, the polypeptide variant may display increased binding to an FcyRIII and, optionally, may further display decreased binding to an FcyRII. An exemplary such variant comprises amino acid modification(s) at position(s) 298 and/or 333 of the Fc region, wherein the numbering of the residues in the Fc region is that of the EU index as in Kabat.

30

35

The polypeptide variant may display increased binding to an FcγRII and comprise an amino acid modification at any one or more of amino acid positions 255, 256, 258, 267, 268, 272, 276, 280, 283, 285, 286, 290, 301, 305, 307, 309, 312, 315, 320, 322, 326, 330, 331, 337, 340, 378, 398 or 430 of the Fc region, wherein the numbering of the residues in the Fc region is that of the EU index as in Kabat. Such polypeptide variants with increased binding to an FcγRII may optionally further display decreased binding to an FcγRIII and may, for example, comprise an amino acid modification at any one or more of amino acid positions 268, 272, 298, 301, 322 or

40

340 of the Fc region, wherein the numbering of the residues in the Fc region is that of the EU index as in Kabat.

45

The invention further provides a polypeptide comprising a variant Fc region with altered neonatal Fc receptor (FcRn) binding affinity, which polypeptide comprises an amino acid modification at any one or more of amino acid positions 238, 252, 253, 254, 255, 256, 265, 272,

35

286, 288, 303, 305, 307, 309, 311, 312, 317, 340, 356, 360, 362, 376, 378, 380, 382, 386, 388,

5

10

400, 413, 415, 424, 433, 434, 435, 436, 439 or 447 of the Fc region, wherein the numbering of the residues in the Fc region is that of the EU index as in Kabat. Such polypeptide variants with reduced binding to an FcRn may comprise an amino acid modification at any one or more of amino acid positions 252, 253, 254, 255, 288, 309, 386, 388, 400, 415, 433, 435, 436, 439 or 447 of the Fc region, wherein the numbering of the residues in the Fc region is that of the EU index as in Kabat. The above-mentioned polypeptide variants may, alternatively, display increased binding to FcRn and comprise an amino acid modification at any one or more of amino acid positions 238, 256, 265, 272, 286, 303, 305, 307, 311, 312, 317, 340, 356, 360, 362, 376, 378, 380, 382, 413, 424 or 434 of the Fc region, wherein the numbering of the residues in the Fc region is that of the EU index as in Kabat.

20

25

10

15

30

15

The invention also provides a composition comprising the polypeptide variant and a physiologically or pharmaceutically acceptable camer or diluent. This composition for potential therapeutic use is sterile and may be lyophilized.

Diagnostic and therapeutic uses for the polypeptide variants disclosed herein are contemplated. In one diagnostic application, the invention provides a method for determining the presence of an antigen of interest comprising exposing a sample suspected of containing the antigen to the polypeptide variant and determining binding of the polypeptide variant to the sample. In one therapeutic application, the invention provides a method of treating a mammal suffering from or predisposed to a disease or disorder, comprising administering to the mammal a therapeutically effective amount of a polypeptide variant as disclosed herein, or of a composition comprising the polypeptide variant and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

30

35

The invention further provides: isolated nucleic acid encoding the polypeptide variant; a vector comprising the nucleic acid, optionally, operably linked to control sequences recognized by a host cell transformed with the vector, a host cell containing the vector; a method for producing the polypeptide variant comprising culturing this host cell so that the nucleic acid is expressed and, optionally, recovering the polypeptide variant from the host cell culture (e.g. from the host cell culture medium).

40

The invention further provides a method for making a variant Fc region with altered Fc receptor (FcR) binding affinity, or altered antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC) activity, comprising:

45

- (a) introducing one or more amino acid modifications into an Fc region of a parent polypeptide in order to generate a variant Fc region;
- (b) determining binding of the variant Fc region to an FcR, or determining ADCC activity of the variant Fc region.

5

10

Step (b) of the method may comprise determining binding of the variant Fc region to one or more FcRs *in vitro*. Moreover, the method may result in the identification of a variant Fc region with improved FcR binding affinity, or with improved ADCC activity, in step (b) thereof. Where step (b) comprises determining binding of the Fc region to an FcR, the FcR may, for example, be human Fc gamma receptor III (FcyRIII). Where step (b) comprises determining binding of the variant Fc region to at least two different FcRs, the FcRs tested preferably include human Fc gamma receptor II (FcyRII) and human Fc gamma receptor III (FcyRIII).

15

Brief Description of the Drawings

10 by h

Figure 1 is a schematic representation of a native IgG. Disulfide bonds are represented by heavy lines between CH1 and CL domains and the two CH2 domains. V is variable domain; C is constant domain; L stands for light chain and H stands for heavy chain.

20

25

30

35

Figure 2 shows C1q binding of wild type (wt) C2B8 antibody; C2B8 antibody with a human IgG2 constant region (IgG2); and variants K322A, K320A and E318A.

15

Figure 3 depicts C1q binding of variants P331A, P329A and K322A.

Figures 4A and 4B depict the amino acid sequences of E27 anti-IgE antibody light chain (Fig. 4A; SEQ ID NO:1) and heavy chain (Fig. 4B; SEQ ID NO:2).

. 20

Figure 5 is a schematic diagram of the "immune complex" prepared for use in the FcR assay described in Example 1. The hexamer comprising three anti-IgE antibody molecules (the "Fc region-containing polypeptide") and three IgE molecules (the "first target molecule") is shown. IgE has two "binding sites" for the anti-IgE antibody (E27) in the Fc region thereof. Each IgE molecule in the complex is further able to bind two VEGF molecules ("the second target polypeptide"). VEGF has two "binding sites" for IgE.

Figure 6 shows C1q binding results obtained for variants D270K and D270V compared to wild type C2B8.

25

Figure 7 depicts complement dependent cytotoxicity (CDC) of variants D270K and D270V, compared to wild type C2B8.

40

45

50

Figure 8 shows C1q binding ELISA results for 293 cell-produced wild type C2B8 antibody (293-Wt-C2B8), CHO-produced wild type C2B8 antibody (CHO-Wt-C2B8) and various variant antibodies.

Figure 9 shows C1q binding ELISA results obtained for wild type (wt) C2B8 and various variant antibodies as determined in Example 3.

Figure 10 depicts the three-dimensional structure of a human IgG Fc region, highlighting residues: Asp270, Lys326, Pro329, Pro331, Lys322 and Glu333.

35

30

Figure 11 shows C1q binding ELISA results obtained for wild type C2B8 and various variant antibodies as determined in Example 3.

5

10

Figure 12 shows C1q binding ELISA results obtained for wild type C2B8 and double variants, K326M-E333S and K326A-E333A.

Figure 13 shows CDC of wild type C2B8 and double variants, K326M-E333S and K326A-E333A.

5 V

10

Figure 14 depicts C1q binding ELISA results obtained for C2B8 with a human IgG4 (IgG4), wild type C2B8 (Wt-C2B8), C2B8 with a human IgG2 constant region (IgG2), and variant antibodies as described in Example 3.

Figures 15A and 15B show binding patterns for parent antibody (E27) to FcyRIIB and

15

FcγRIIIA. Figure 15A shows the binding pattern for the humanized anti-IgE E27 IgG1 as a monomer (open circles), hexamer (closed squares), and immune complex consisting of multiple hexamers (closed triangles) to a recombinant GST fusion protein of the human FcγRIIB (CD32) receptor α subunit. The hexameric complex (closed squares) was formed by the mixture of equal molar concentrations of E27 (which binds to the Fc region of human IgE) and a human myeloma IgE. The hexamer is a stable 1.1 kD complex consisting of 3 IgG molecules (150 kD each) and 3 IgE molecules (200 kD each). The immune complex (closed triangles) was formed sequentially by first mixing equal molar concentrations of E27 and recombinant anti-VEGF IgE (human IgE with Fab variable domains that bind human VEGF) to form the hexamer. Hexamers were then linked to form an immune complex by the addition of 2x molar concentration of human VEGF, a

25

20

44 kD homodimer which has two binding sites for the anti-VEGF IgE per mole of VEGF. Figure
 15B shows the binding pattern to a recombinant GST fusion protein of the human FcγRIIIA
 (CD16) receptor α subunit.

30

35

25

30

40

45

50

Figure 16A shows the binding of immune complexes using different antigen-antibody pairs to recombinant GST fusion protein of the Fc γ RIIA receptor α subunit. Figure 16B shows the binding of the same antigen-antibody pairs to the GST fusion protein of the Fc γ RIIIA receptor α subunit. Closed circles represent binding of human IgE:anti-IgE E27 IgG1; open circles represent binding of human VEGF:humanized anti-VEGF IgG1.

Figure 17 summarizes differences in binding selectivity of some alanine variants between the different Fc_YRs. Binding of alanine variants at residues in the CH2 domain of anti-lgE E27 lgG1 are shown to Fc_YRIIA, Fc_YRIIB, and Fc_YRIIIA. Type 1 abrogates binding to all three receptors: D278A (265 in EU numbering). Type 2 improves binding to Fc_YRIIA and Fc_YRIIB, while binding to Fc_YRIIIA is unaffected: S280A (267 in EU numbering). Type 3 improves binding to Fc_YRIIA and Fc_YRIIB, but reduces binding to Fc_YRIIIA: H281A (268 in EU numbering). Type 4 reduces binding to Fc_YRIIB, while improving binding to Fc_YRIIIA: S317A (298 in EU numbering). Type 5 improves binding to Fc_YRIIIA, but does not affect binding to Fc_YRIIA and Fc_YRIIB: E352A, K353A (333 and 334 in EU numbering).

5

10

Figures 18A and 18B compare the FcvRIIIA protein/protein assay and CHO GPI-FcvRIIIA cell based assay, respectively. Figure 18A illustrates binding of selected alanine variants to FcvRIIIA-GST fusion protein. S317A (298 in EU numbering) and S317A/K353A (298 and 334 in EU numbering) bind better than E27 wildtype, while D278A (265 in EU numbering) almost completely abrogates binding. Figure 18B illustrates that a similar pattern of binding is found on CHO cells expressing a recombinant GPI-linked form of FcvRIIIA.

15

10

20

Figures 19A and 19B compare the Fc_YRIIB protein/protein assay and CHO GPI-Fc_YRIIB cell based assay, respectively. Figure 19A illustrates binding of selected alanine variants to Fc_YRIIB-GST fusion protein. H281A (268 in EU numbering) binds better than E27 wildtype while S317A (298 in EU numbering) shows reduced binding. Figure 19B illustrates that a similar pattern of binding is found on CHO cells expressing a recombinant membrane bound form of Fc_YRIIB.

20

(HERCEPTIN®) that influence Fc_YRIIIA binding in both the protein-protein and cell-based assays alter the ability to bind to Fc_YRIIIA on peripheral blood mononuclear cell (PBMC) effector cells. Recombinant humanized anti-HER2 (HERCEPTIN®), which binds to HER2-expressing SK-BR-3

Figure 20 shows single alanine substitutions in the CH2 domain of anti-HER2 IgG1

25

breast tumor cells, was preincubated with ⁵¹Cr-labeled SK-BR-3 cells for 30 minutes (opsonization) at 100 ng/ml (filled circles) and 1.25 ng/ml (filled squares). Keeping the SK-BR-3 tumor target cell concentration constant, the ratio of effector cells was increased from 0 to 100.

30

The spontaneous cytotoxicity in the absence of antibody (hatched squares) was 20% at an effector:target (E:T) ratio of 100:1. A single alanine mutation that did not affect Fc_YRIIIA binding,

35

variant G31 = R309A (292 in EU numbering), did not effect ADCC (filled triangles). A single alanine mutation that only slightly increased binding to Fc_YRIIIA , variant G30 = K307A (290 in EU numbering), also showed slightly improved ADCC (i.e., a 1.1 fold improvement in ADCC activity, calculated as area under the curve) at 1.25 ng/ml at all E:T ratios (filled diamonds) compared to wildtype antibody at 1.25 ng/ml (filled square). A single alanine mutation that decreased binding to Fc_YRIIIA , variant G34 = Q312A (295 in EU numbering), also showed decreased ADCC activity

40

(filled inverted triangles).

Figure 21 illustrates that a single alanine mutation which had the most improved binding

to Fc_YRIIIA, variant G38 = S317A (298 in EU numbering), in the protein-protein and cell-based assays also showed the most improvement in ADCC (filled triangles) among the variants compared to wildtype (closed squares) at 1.25 ng/ml. G36 displayed a 1.7 fold improvement in ADCC activity, calculated as area under the curve. Variants G17 = E282A (269 in EU numbering) and G18 = D283A (270 in EU numbering) both showed reduced binding to Fc_YRIIIA as well as

reduced efficacy in ADCC. The effector cells were PBMCs.

50

5

10

15

20

10

20

30

25

30

35

40

45

50

Figure 22A depicts alignments of native sequence IgG Fc regions. Native sequence human IgG Fc region sequences, humIgG1 (non-A and A allotypes) (SEQ ID NOs: 3 and 4, respectively), humIgG2 (SEQ ID NO:5), humIgG3 (SEQ ID NO:6) and humIgG4 (SEQ ID NO:7), are shown. The human IgG1 sequence is the non-A allotype, and differences between this sequence and the A allotype (at positions 356 and 358; EU numbering system) are shown below the human IgG1 sequence. Native sequence murine IgG Fc region sequences, murIgG1 (SEQ ID NO:8), murIgG2A (SEQ ID NO:9), murIgG2B (SEQ ID NO:10) and murIgG3 (SEQ ID NO:11), are also shown. Figure 22B shows percent identity among the Fc region sequences of Figure 22A.

Figure 23 depicts alignments of native sequence human IgG Fc region sequences, humlgG1 (non-A and A allotypes; SEQ ID NO:3 and 4, respectively), humlgG2 (SEQ ID NO:5), humlgG3 (SEQ ID NO:6) and humlgG4 (SEQ ID NO:7) with differences between the sequences marked with asterisks.

Figure 24 shows area under curve (AUC) for selected variants compared to anti-HER2 IgG1 (HERCEPTIN®) in a 4 hour ADCC assay. The effector cells were PBMCs (N=5). Variant G36 (S317A; 298 in Eu numbering) with improved binding to FcyRIIIA showed improved ADCC activity; variant G31 (R309A; 292 in Eu numbering) which did not display altered FcyRIIIA binding, also had unaltered ADCC activity; and G14 (D265A; 278 in Eu numbering) which had reduced FcyRIIIA binding, also had reduced ADCC activity.

Detailed Description of the Preferred Embodiments

I. Definitions

Throughout the present specification and claims, the numbering of the residues in an immunoglobulin heavy chain is that of the EU index as in Kabat et al., Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest, 5th Ed. Public Health Service, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD (1991), expressly incorporated herein by reference. The "EU index as in Kabat" refers to the residue numbering of the human IgG1 EU antibody.

A "parent polypeptide" is a polypeptide comprising an amino acid sequence which lacks one or more of the Fc region modifications disclosed herein and which differs in effector function compared to a polypeptide variant as herein disclosed. The parent polypeptide may comprise a native sequence Fc region or an Fc region with pre-existing amino acid sequence modifications (such as additions, deletions and/or substitutions).

The term "Fc region" is used to define a C-terminal region of an immunoglobulin heavy chain, e.g., as shown in Figure 1. The "Fc region" may be a native sequence Fc region or a variant Fc region. Although the boundaries of the Fc region of an immunoglobulin heavy chain might vary, the human IgG heavy chain Fc region is usually defined to stretch from an amino acid

residue at position Cys226, or from Pro230, to the carboxyl-terminus thereof. The Fc region of an immunoglobulin generally comprises two constant domains, CH2 and CH3, as shown, for example, In Fig. 1.

The "CH2 domain" of a human IgG Fc region (also referred to as "C γ 2" domain) usually extends from about amino acid 231 to about amino acid 340. The CH2 domain is unique in that it is not closely paired with another domain. Rather, two N-linked branched carbohydrate chains are interposed between the two CH2 domains of an intact native IgG molecule. It has been speculated that the carbohydrate may provide a substitute for the domain-domain pairing and help stabilize the CH2 domain. Burton, *Molec. Immunol.*22:161-206 (1985).

The "CH3 domain" comprises the stretch of residues C-terminal to a CH2 domain in an Fc region (*i.e.* from about amino acid residue 341 to about amino acid residue 447 of an IgG)

A "functional Fc region" possesses an "effector function" of a native sequence Fc region. Exemplary "effector functions" include C1q binding; complement dependent cytotoxicity; Fc receptor binding; antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC); phagocytosis; down regulation of cell surface receptors (e.g. B cell receptor; BCR), etc. Such effector functions generally require the Fc region to be combined with a binding domain (e.g. an antibody variable domain) and can be assessed using various assays as herein disclosed, for example.

A "native sequence Fc region" comprises an amino acid sequence identical to the amino acid sequence of an Fc region found in nature. Native sequence human Fc regions are shown in Fig. 23 and include a native sequence human IgG1 Fc region (non-A and A allotypes); native sequence human IgG3 Fc region; and native sequence human IgG4 Fc region as well as naturally occurring variants thereof. Native sequence murine Fc regions are shown in Fig. 22A.

A "variant Fc region" comprises an amino acid sequence which differs from that of a native sequence Fc region by virtue of at least one "amino acid modification" as herein defined. Preferably, the variant Fc region has at least one amino acid substitution compared to a native sequence Fc region or to the Fc region of a parent polypeptide, e.g. from about one to about ten amino acid substitutions, and preferably from about one to about five amino acid substitutions in a native sequence Fc region or in the Fc region of the parent polypeptide. The variant Fc region herein will preferably possess at least about 80% homology with a native sequence Fc region and/or with an Fc region of a parent polypeptide, and most preferably at least about 90% homology therewith, more preferably at least about 95% homology therewith.

"Homology" is defined as the percentage of residues in the amino acid sequence variant that are identical after aligning the sequences and introducing gaps, if necessary, to achieve the maximum percent homology. Methods and computer programs for the alignment are well known

5

in the art. One such computer program is "Align 2", authored by Genentech, Inc., which was filed with user documentation in the United States Copyright Office, Washington, DC 20559, on December 10, 1991.

10

The term "Fc region-containing polypeptide" refers to a polypeptide, such as an antibody or immunoadhesin (see definitions below), which comprises an Fc region.

The terms "Fc receptor" or "FcR" are used to describe a receptor that binds to the Fc region of an antibody. The preferred FcR is a native sequence human FcR. Moreover, a

15

preferred FcR is one which binds an IgG antibody (a gamma receptor) and includes receptors of the FcyRI, FcyRII, and FcyRIII subclasses, including allelic variants and alternatively spliced forms of these receptors. FcyRII receptors include FcyRIIA (an "activating receptor") and FcyRIIB (an "inhibiting receptor"), which have similar amino acid sequences that differ primarily in the cytoplasmic domains thereof. Activating receptor FcyRIIA contains an immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activation motif (ITAM) in its cytoplasmic domain. Inhibiting receptor FcyRIIB contains an

20

based activation motif (ITAM) in its cytoplasmic domain. Inhibiting receptor FcyRIIB contains an immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibition motif (ITIM) in its cytoplasmic domain. (see review M.

25

in Daëron, Annu. Rev. Immunol. 15:203-234 (1997)). FcRs are reviewed in Ravetch and Kinet, Annu. Rev. Immunol 9:457-92 (1991); Capel et al., Immunomethods 4:25-34 (1994); and de Haas et al., J. Lab. Clin. Med. 126:330-41 (1995). Other FcRs, including those to be identified in the future, are encompassed by the term "FcR" herein. The term also includes the neonatal

receptor, FcRn, which is responsible for the transfer of maternal IgGs to the fetus (Guyer et al.,

"Antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity" and "ADCC" refer to a cell-mediated

20

30

5

10

J. Immunol. 117:587 (1976) and Kim et al., J. Immunol. 24:249 (1994)).

35

40

30

reaction in which nonspecific cytotoxic cells that express FcRs (e.g. Natural Killer (NK) cells, neutrophils, and macrophages) recognize bound antibody on a target cell and subsequently cause lysis of the target cell. The primary cells for mediating ADCC, NK cells, express FcqRIII only, whereas monocytes express FcqRI, FcqRII and FcqRIII. FcR expression on hematopoietic

cells is summarized in Table 3 on page 464 of Ravetch and Kinet, Annu. Rev. Immunol 9:457-92

(1991).

"Human effector cells" are leukocytes which express one or more FcRs and perform effector functions. Preferably, the cells express at least Fc_YRIII and perform ADCC effector function. Examples of human leukocytes which mediate ADCC include peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMC), natural killer (NK) cells, monocytes, cytotoxic T cells and neutrophils; with PBMCs and NK cells being preferred. The effector cells may be isolated from a native source thereof, e.g. from blood or PBMCs as described herein.

45

50

A polypeptide variant with "altered" FcR binding affinity or ADCC activity is one which has either enhanced or diminished FcR binding activity and/or ADCC activity compared to a parent

polypeptide or to a polypeptide comprising a native sequence Fc region. The polypeptide variant which "displays increased binding" to an FcR binds at least one FcR with better affinity than the parent polypeptide. The polypeptide variant which "displays decreased binding" to an FcR, binds at least one FcR with worse affinity than a parent polypeptide. Such variants which display decreased binding to an FcR may possess little or no appreciable binding to an FcR, e.g., 0-20% binding to the FcR compared to a native sequence IgG Fc region, e.g. as determined in the Examples herein.

The polypeptide variant which binds an FcR with "better affinity" than a parent polypeptide, is one which binds any one or more of the above identified FcRs with substantially better binding affinity than the parent antibody, when the amounts of polypeptide variant and parent polypeptide in the binding assay are essentially the same. For example, the polypeptide variant with improved FcR binding affinity may display from about 1.15 fold to about 100 fold, e.g. from about 1.2 fold to about 50 fold improvement in FcR binding affinity compared to the parent polypeptide, where FcR binding affinity is determined, for example, as disclosed in the Examples herein.

The polypeptide variant which "mediates antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC) in the presence of human effector cells more effectively" than a parent antibody is one which *in vitro* or *in vivo* is substantially more effective at mediating ADCC, when the amounts of polypeptide variant and parent antibody used in the assay are essentially the same. Generally, such variants will be identified using the *in vitro* ADCC assay as herein disclosed, but other assays or methods for determining ADCC activity, e.g. in an animal model etc, are contemplated. The preferred variant is from about 1.5 fold to about 100 fold, e.g. from about two fold to about fifty fold, more effective at mediating ADCC than the parent, e.g. in the *in vitro* assay disclosed herein.

An "amino acid modification" refers to a change in the amino acid sequence of a predetermined amino acid sequence. Exemplary modifications include an amino acid substitution, insertion and/or deletion. The preferred amino acid modification herein is a substitution.

An "amino acid modification at" a specified position, e.g. of the Fc region, refers to the substitution or deletion of the specified residue, or the insertion of at least one amino acid residue adjacent the specified residue. By insertion "adjacent" a specified residue is meant insertion within one to two residues thereof. The insertion may be N-terminal or C-terminal to the specified residue.

An "amino acid substitution" refers to the replacement of at least one existing amino acid residue in a predetermined amino acid sequence with another different "replacement" amino acid residue. The replacement residue or residues may be "naturally occurring amino acid residues" (*I.e.* encoded by the genetic code) and selected from the group consisting of: alanine (Ala);

-14-

arginine (Arg); asparagine (Asn); aspartic acid (Asp); cysteine (Cys); glutamine (Gln); glutamic acid (Glu); glycine (Gly); histidine (His); isoleucine (Ile): leucine (Leu); lysine (Lys); methionine (Met); phenylalanine (Phe); proline (Pro); serine (Ser); threonine (Thr); tryptophan (Trp); tyrosine (Tyr); and valine (Val). Preferably, the replacement residue is not cysteine. Substitution with one or more non-naturally occurring amino acid residues is also encompassed by the definition of an amino acid substitution herein. A "non-naturally occurring amino acid residue" refers to a residue, other than those naturally occurring amino acid residues listed above, which is able to covalently bind adjacent amino acid residues(s) in a polypeptide chain. Examples of non-naturally occurring amino acid residue analogues such as those described in Ellman et al. Meth. Enzym. 202:301-336 (1991). To generate such non-naturally occurring amino acid residues, the procedures of Noren et al. Science 244:182 (1989) and Ellman et al., supra, can be used. Briefly, these procedures involve chemically activating a suppressor tRNA with a non-naturally occurring amino acid residue followed by *In vitro* transcription and translation of the RNA.

An "amino acid insertion" refers to the incorporation of at least one amino acid into a predetermined amino acid sequence. While the insertion will usually consist of the insertion of one or two amino acid residues, the present application contemplates larger "peptide insertions", e.g. insertion of about three to about five or even up to about ten amino acid residues. The inserted residue(s) may be naturally occurring or non-naturally occurring as disclosed above.

An "amino acid deletion" refers to the removal of at least one amino acid residue from a predetermined amino acid sequence.

"Hinge region" is generally defined as stretching from Glu216 to Pro230 of human IgG1 (Burton, *Molec. Immunol.*22:161-206 (1985)). Hinge regions of other IgG isotypes may be aligned with the IgG1 sequence by placing the first and last cystelne residues forming inter-heavy chain S-S bonds in the same positions.

The "lower hinge region" of an Fc region is normally defined as the stretch of residues immediately C-terminal to the hinge region, *i.e.* residues 233 to 239 of the Fc region. Prior to the present invention, $Fc\gamma R$ binding was generally attributed to amino acid residues in the lower hinge region of an IgG Fc region.

"C1q" is a polypeptide that includes a binding site for the Fc region of an immunoglobulin. C1q together with two serine proteases, C1r and C1s, forms the complex C1, the first component of the complement dependent cytotoxicity (CDC) pathway. Human C1q can be purchased commercially from, e.g. Quidel, San Diego, CA.

The term "binding domain" refers to the region of a polypeptide that binds to another molecule. In the case of an FcR, the binding domain can comprise a portion of a polypeptide

5

chain thereof (e.g. the α chain thereof) which is responsible for binding an Fc region. One useful binding domain is the extracellular domain of an FcR α chain.

10

The term "antibody" is used in the broadest sense and specifically covers monoclonal antibodies (including full length monoclonal antibodies), polyclonal antibodies, multispecific antibodies (e.g., bispecific antibodies), and antibody fragments so long as they exhibit the desired biological activity.

15

"Antibody fragments", as defined for the purpose of the present invention, comprise a portion of an intact antibody, generally including the antigen binding or variable region of the intact antibody or the Fc region of an antibody which retains FcR binding capability. Examples of antibody fragments include linear antibodies; single-chain antibody molecules; and multispecific antibodies formed from antibody fragments. The antibody fragments preferably retain at least part of the hinge and optionally the CH1 region of an IgG heavy chain. More preferably, the antibody fragments retain the entire constant region of an IgG heavy chain, and include an IgG light chain.

20

The term "monoclonal antibody" as used herein refers to an antibody obtained from a population of substantially homogeneous antibodies, *i.e.*, the individual antibodies comprising the

25

30

population of substantially homogeneous antibodies, *i.e.*, the individual antibodies comprising the population are identical except for possible naturally occurring mutations that may be present in minor amounts. Monoclonal antibodies are highly specific, being directed against a single

antigenic site. Furthermore, in contrast to conventional (polyclonal) antibody preparations that

20

10

typically include different antibodies directed against different determinants (epitopes), each monoclonal antibody is directed against a single determinant on the antigen. The modifier

35

"monoclonal" indicates the character of the antibody as being obtained from a substantially homogeneous population of antibodies, and is not to be construed as requiring production of the antibody by any particular method. For example, the monoclonal antibodies to be used in accordance with the present invention may be made by the hybridoma method first described by

40

Kohler et al., Nature 256:495 (1975), or may be made by recombinant DNA methods (see, e.g., U.S. Patent No. 4,816,567). The "monoclonal antibodies" may also be isolated from phage antibody libraries using the techniques described in Clackson et al., Nature 352:624-628 (1991)

and Marks et al., J. Mol. Biol. 222:581-597 (1991), for example.

30

The monoclonal antibodies herein specifically include "chimeric" antibodies (immunoglobulins) in which a portion of the heavy and/or light chain is identical with or homologous to corresponding sequences in antibodies derived from a particular species or belonging to a particular antibody class or subclass, while the remainder of the chain(s) is

50

45

identical with or homologous to corresponding sequences in antibodies derived from another species or belonging to another antibody class or subclass, as well as fragments of such

PCT/US00/00973 WO 00/42072

5

10

antibodies, so long as they exhibit the desired biological activity (U.S. Patent No. 4,816,567; and Morrison et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 81:6851-6855 (1984)).

15

10

15

20

30

25

20

30

35

40

45

50

"Humanized" forms of non-human (e.g., murine) antibodies are chimeric antibodies that contain minimal sequence derived from non-human immunoglobulin. For the most part, humanized antibodies are human immunoglobulins (recipient antibody) in which residues from a hypervariable region of the recipient are replaced by residues from a hypervariable region of a non-human species (donor antibody) such as mouse, rat, rabbit or nonhuman primate having the desired specificity, affinity, and capacity. In some instances, Fv framework region (FR) residues of the human immunoglobulin are replaced by corresponding non-human residues. Furthermore, humanized antibodies may comprise residues that are not found in the recipient antibody or in the donor antibody. These modifications are made to further refine antibody performance. In general, the humanized antibody will comprise substantially all of at least one, and typically two, variable domains, in which all or substantially all of the hypervariable loops correspond to those of a nonhuman immunoglobulin and all or substantially all of the FR regions are those of a human immunoglobulin sequence. The humanized antibody optionally also will comprise at least a portion of an immunoglobulin constant region (Fc), typically that of a human immunoglobulin. For further details, see Jones et al., Nature 321:522-525 (1986); Riechmann et al., Nature 332:323-329 (1988); and Presta, Curr. Op. Struct Biol. 2:593-596 (1992).

The term "hypervariable region" when used herein refers to the amino acid residues of an antibody which are responsible for antigen-binding. The hypervariable region comprises amino acid residues from a "complementarity determining region" or "CDR" (i.e. residues 24-34 (L1), 50-56 (L2) and 89-97 (L3) in the light chain variable domain and 31-35 (H1), 50-65 (H2) and 95-102 (H3) in the heavy chain variable domain; Kabat et al., Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest, 5th Ed. Public Health Service, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD. (1991)) and/or those residues from a "hypervariable loop" (i.e. residues 26-32 (L1), 50-52 (L2) and 91-96 (L3) in the light chain variable domain and 26-32 (H1), 53-55 (H2) and 96-101 (H3) in the heavy chain variable domain; Chothia and Lesk J. Mol. Biol. 196:901-917 (1987)). "Framework" or "FR" residues are those variable domain residues other than the hypervariable region residues as herein defined.

As used herein, the term "immunoadhesin" designates antibody-like molecules which combine the "binding domain" of a heterologous "adhesin" protein (e.g. a receptor, ligand or enzyme) with an immunoglobulin constant domain. Structurally, the immunoadhesins comprise a fusion of the adhesin amino acid sequence with the desired binding specificity which is other than the antigen recognition and binding site (antigen combining site) of an antibody (i.e. is "heterologous") and an immunoglobulin constant domain sequence.

The term "ligand binding domain" as used herein refers to any native cell-surface receptor or any region or derivative thereof retaining at least a qualitative ligand binding ability of a corresponding native receptor. In a specific embodiment, the receptor is from a cell-surface polypeptide having an extracellular domain that is homologous to a member of the immunoglobulin supergenefamily. Other receptors, which are not members of the immunoglobulin supergenefamily but are nonetheless specifically covered by this definition, are receptors for cytokines, and in particular receptors with tyrosine kinase activity (receptor tyrosine kinases), members of the hematopoietin and nerve growth factor receptor superfamilies, and cell adhesion molecules, e.g. (E-, L- and P-) selectins.

by at least one purification step.

The term "receptor binding domain" is used to designate any native ligand for a receptor, including cell adhesion molecules, or any region or derivative of such native ligand retaining at least a qualitative receptor binding ability of a corresponding native ligand. This definition, among others, specifically includes binding sequences from ligands for the above-mentioned receptors.

An "antibody-immunoadhesin chimera" comprises a molecule that combines at least one binding domain of an antibody (as herein defined) with at least one immunoadhesin (as defined in this application). Exemplary antibody-immunoadhesin chimeras are the bispecific CD4-lgG chimeras described in Berg et al., PNAS (USA) 88:4723-4727 (1991) and Chamow et al., J. Immunol. 153:4268 (1994).

An "isolated" polypeptide is one that has been identified and separated and/or recovered from a component of its natural environment. Contaminant components of its natural environment are materials that would interfere with diagnostic or therapeutic uses for the polypeptide, and may include enzymes, hormones, and other proteinaceous or nonproteinaceous solutes. In preferred embodiments, the polypeptide will be purified (1) to greater than 95% by weight of polypeptide as determined by the Lowry method, and most preferably more than 99% by weight, (2) to a degree

embodiments, the polypeptide will be purified (1) to greater than 95% by weight of polypeptide as determined by the Lowry method, and most preferably more than 99% by weight, (2) to a degree sufficient to obtain at least 15 residues of N-terminal or internal amino acid sequence by use of a spinning cup sequenator, or (3) to homogeneity by SDS-PAGE under reducing or nonreducing conditions using Coomassie blue or, preferably, silver stain. Isolated polypeptide includes the polypeptide *in situ* within recombinant cells since at least one component of the polypeptide's natural environment will not be present. Ordinarily, however, isolated polypeptide will be prepared

"Treatment" refers to both therapeutic treatment and prophylactic or preventative measures. Those in need of treatment include those already with the disorder as well as those in which the disorder is to be prevented.

A "disorder" is any condition that would benefit from treatment with the polypeptide variant. This includes chronic and acute disorders or diseases including those pathological conditions

-18-

5

which predispose the mammal to the disorder in question. In one embodiment, the disorder is cancer.

The terms "cancer" and "cancerous" refer to or describe the physiological condition in mammals that is typically characterized by unregulated cell growth. Examples of cancer include

10

15

but are not limited to, carcinoma, lymphoma, blastoma, sarcoma, and leukemia. More particular examples of such cancers include squamous cell cancer, small-cell lung cancer, non-small cell lung cancer, adenocarcinoma of the lung, squamous carcinoma of the lung, cancer of the peritoneum, hepatocellular cancer, gastrointestinal cancer, pancreatic cancer, glioblastoma, cervical cancer, ovarian cancer, liver cancer, bladder cancer, hepatoma, breast cancer, colon cancer, colorectal cancer, endometrial or uterine carcinoma, salivary gland carcinoma, kidney cancer, liver cancer, prostate cancer, vulval cancer, thyroid cancer, hepatic carcinoma and

20

10

20

25

30

35

various types of head and neck cancer.

A "HER2-expressing cancer" is one comprising cells which have HER2 receptor protein (Semba et al., PNAS (USA) 82:6497-6501 (1985) and Yamamoto et al. Nature 319:230-234 (1986) (Genebank accession number X03363)) present at their cell surface, such that an anti-HER2 antibody is able to bind to the cancer.

25

The word "label" when used herein refers to a detectable compound or composition which is conjugated directly or indirectly to the polypeptide. The label may be itself be detectable (e.g., radioisotope labels or fluorescent labels) or, in the case of an enzymatic label, may catalyze chemical alteration of a substrate compound or composition which is detectable.

30

An "isolated" nucleic acid molecule is a nucleic acid molecule that is identified and separated from at least one contaminant nucleic acid molecule with which it is ordinarily associated in the natural source of the polypeptide nucleic acid. An isolated nucleic acid molecule is other than in the form or setting in which it is found in nature. Isolated nucleic acid molecules therefore are distinguished from the nucleic acid molecule as it exists in natural cells. However, an isolated nucleic acid molecule includes a nucleic acid molecule contained in cells that ordinarily express the polypeptide where, for example, the nucleic acid molecule is in a chromosomal location different from that of natural cells.

40

35

The expression "control sequences" refers to DNA sequences necessary for the expression of an operably linked coding sequence in a particular host organism. The control sequences that are suitable for prokaryotes, for example, include a promoter, optionally an operator sequence, and a ribosome binding site. Eukaryotic cells are known to utilize promoters, polyadenylation signals, and enhancers.

45

Nucleic acid is "operably linked" when it is placed into a functional relationship with another nucleic acid sequence. For example, DNA for a presequence or secretory leader is

operably linked to DNA for a polypeptide if it is expressed as a preprotein that participates in the secretion of the polypeptide; a promoter or enhancer is operably linked to a coding sequence if it affects the transcription of the sequence; or a ribosome binding site is operably linked to a coding sequence if it is positioned so as to facilitate translation. Generally, "operably linked" means that the DNA sequences being linked are contiguous, and, in the case of a secretory leader, contiguous and in reading phase. However, enhancers do not have to be contiguous. Linking is accomplished by ligation at convenient restriction sites. If such sites do not exist, the synthetic oligonucleotide adaptors or linkers are used in accordance with conventional practice.

As used herein, the expressions "cell," "cell line," and "cell culture" are used interchangeably and all such designations include progeny. Thus, the words "transformants" and "transformed cells" include the primary subject cell and cultures derived therefrom without regard for the number of transfers. It is also understood that all progeny may not be precisely identical in DNA content, due to deliberate or inadvertent mutations. Mutant progeny that have the same function or biological activity as screened for in the originally transformed cell are included. Where distinct designations are intended, it will be clear from the context.

The term "molecular complex" when used herein refers to the relatively stable structure which forms when two or more heterologous molecules (e.g. polypeptides) bind (preferably noncovalently) to one another. The preferred molecular complex herein is an immune complex.

"Immune complex" refers to the relatively stable structure which forms when at least one target molecule and at least one heterologous Fc region-containing polypeptide bind to one another forming a larger molecular weight complex. Examples of immune complexes are antigenantibody aggregates and target molecule-immunoadhesin aggregates. The term "immune complex" as used herein, unless indicated otherwise, refers to an ex vivo complex (Le. other than the form or setting in which it may be found in nature). However, the immune complex may be administered to a mammal, e.g. to evaluate clearance of the immune complex in the mammal.

The term "target molecule" refers to a molecule, usually a polypeptide, which is capable of being bound by a heterologous molecule and has one or more binding sites for the heterologous molecule. The term "binding site" refers to a region of a molecule to which another molecule can bind. The "first target molecule" herein comprises at least two distinct binding sites (for example, two to five separate binding sites) for an analyte (e.g. an Fc region-containing polypeptide) such that at least two analyte molecules can bind to the first target molecule. In the preferred embodiment of the invention, the two or more binding sites are identical (e.g. having the same amino acid sequence, where the target molecule is a polypeptide). In Example 1 below, the first target molecule was IgE and had two separate binding sites in the Fc region thereof to which the Fc region-containing polypeptide (an anti-IgE antibody, E27) could bind. Other first

target molecules include dimers of substantially identical monomors (e.g. neurotrophins, IL8 and VEGF) or are polypeptides comprising two or more substantially identical polypeptide chains (e.g. antibodies or Immunoadhesins). The "second target molecule" comprises at least two distinct binding sites (for example, two to five separate binding sites) for the first target molecule such that at least two first target molecules can bind to the second target molecule. Preferably, the two or more binding sites are identical (e.g. having the same amino acid sequence, where the target molecule is a polypeptide). In Example 2, the second target molecule was VEGF, which has a pair of distinct binding sites to which the variable domain of the IgE antibody could bind. Other second target molecules are contemplated, e.g. other dimers of substantially identical monomers (e.g. neurotrophins or IL8) or polypeptides comprising two or more substantially identical domains (e.g. antibodies or immunoadhesins).

An "analyte" is a substance that is to be analyzed. The preferred analyte is an Fc region-containing polypeptide that is to be analyzed for its ability to bind to an Fc receptor.

A "receptor" is a polypeptide capable of binding at least one tigand. The preferred receptor is a cell-surface receptor having an extracellular ligand-binding domain and, optionally, other domains (e.g. transmembrane domain, intracellular domain and/or membrane anchor). The receptor to be evaluated in the assay described herein may be an intact receptor or a fragment or derivative thereof (e.g. a fusion protein comprising the binding domain of the receptor fused to one or more heterologous polypeptides). Moreover, the receptor to be evaluated for its binding properties may be present in a cell or isolated and optionally coated on an assay plate or some other solid phase.

The phrase "low affinity receptor" denotes a receptor that has a weak binding affinity for a ligand of interest, e.g. having a binding constant of about 50nM or worse affinity. Exemplary low affinity receptors include Fc₇RII and Fc₇RIII.

II. Modes for Carrying Out the Invention

The invention herein relates to a method for making a polypeptide variant. The "parent", "starting" or "nonvariant" polypeptide is prepared using techniques available in the art for generating polypeptides comprising an Fc region. In the preferred embodiment of the invention, the parent polypeptide is an antibody and exemplary methods for generating antibodies are described in more detail in the following sections. The parent polypeptide may, however, be any other polypeptide comprising an Fc region, e.g. an immunoadhesin. Methods for making immunoadhesins are elaborated in more detail hereinbelow.

In an alternative embodiment, a variant Fc region may be generated according to the methods herein disclosed and this "variant Fc region" can be fused to a heterologous polypeptide of choice, such as an antibody variable domain or binding domain of a receptor or ligand.

The parent polypeptide comprises an Fc region. Generally the Fc region of the parent polypeptide will comprise a native sequence Fc region, and preferably a human native sequence Fc region. However, the Fc region of the parent polypeptide may have one or more pre-existing amino acid sequence alterations or modifications from a native sequence Fc region. For example, the C1q binding activity of the Fc region may have been previously altered (other types of Fc region modifications are described in more detail below). In a further embodiment the parent polypeptide Fc region is "conceptual" and, while it does not physically exist, the antibody engineer may decide upon a desired variant Fc region amino acid sequence and generate a polypeptide comprising that sequence or a DNA encoding the desired variant Fc region amino acid sequence.

In the preferred embodiment of the Invention, however, a nucleic acid encoding an Fc region of a parent polypeptide is available and this nucleic acid sequence is altered to generate a variant nucleic acid sequence encoding the Fc region variant.

DNA encoding an amino acid sequence variant of the starting polypeptide is prepared by a variety of methods known in the art. These methods include, but are not limited to, preparation by site-directed (or oligonucleotide-mediated) mutagenesis, PCR mutagenesis, and cassette mutagenesis of an earlier prepared DNA encoding the polypeptide

Site-directed mutagenesis is a preferred method for preparing substitution variants. This technique is well known in the art (see, e.g., Carter et al. Nucleic Acids Res. 13:4431-4443 (1985) and Kunkel et al., Proc. Natl. Acad.Sci.USA 82:488 (1987)). Briefly, in carrying out site-directed mutagenesis of DNA, the starting DNA is altered by first hybridizing an oligonucleotide encoding the desired mutation to a single strand of such starting DNA. After hybridization, a DNA polymerase is used to synthesize an entire second strand, using the hybridized oligonucleotide as a primer, and using the single strand of the starting DNA as a template. Thus, the oligonucleotide encoding the desired mutation is incorporated in the resulting double-stranded DNA.

PCR mutagenesis is also suitable for making amino acid sequence variants of the starting polypeptide. See Higuchi, in *PCR Protocols*, pp.177-183 (Academic Press, 1990); and Vallette et al., Nuc. Acids Res. 17:723-733 (1989). Briefly, when small amounts of template DNA are used as starting material in a PCR, primers that differ slightly in sequence from the corresponding region in a template DNA can be used to generate relatively large quantities of a specific DNA fragment that differs from the template sequence only at the positions where the primers differ from the template.

Another method for preparing variants, cassette mutagenesis, is based on the technique described by Wells *et al.*, *Gene* 34:315-323 (1985). The starting material is the plasmid (or other vector) comprising the starting polypeptide DNA to be mutated. The codon(s) in the starting DNA

to be mutated are identified. There must be a unique restriction endonuclease site on each side of the identified mutation site(s). If no such restriction sites exist, they may be generated using the above-described oligonucleotide-mediated mutagenesis method to introduce them at appropriate locations in the starting polypeptide DNA. The plasmid DNA is cut at these sites to linearize it. A double-stranded oligonucleotide encoding the sequence of the DNA between the restriction sites but containing the desired mutation(s) is synthesized using standard procedures, wherein the two strands of the oligonucleotide are synthesized separately and then hybridized together using standard techniques. This double-stranded oligonucleotide is referred to as the cassette. This cassette is designed to have 5' and 3' ends that are compatible with the ends of the linearized plasmid, such that it can be directly ligated to the plasmid. This plasmid now contains the mutated DNA sequence.

Alternatively, or additionally, the desired amino acid sequence encoding a polypeptide variant can be determined, and a nucleic acid sequence encoding such amino acid sequence variant can be generated synthetically.

The amino acid sequence of the parent polypeptide is modified in order to generate a variant Fc region with altered Fc receptor binding affinity or activity *in vitro* and/or *in vivo* and/or altered antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC) activity *in vitro* and/or *in vivo*.

Generally, the modification entails one or more amino acid substitutions. In one

embodiment, the replacement residue does not correspond to a residue present in the same position in any of the native sequence Fc regions in Figure 22A. For example, according to this embodiment of the invention, Pro331 of a human IgG3 or IgG1 Fc region is replaced with a residue other than Ser (the corresponding aligned residue found in native sequence human IgG4). In one embodiment, the residue in the parent polypeptide which is substituted with a replacement

residue is not an alanine and/or is not residue Ala339 of an Fc region. In the case of an amino acid substitution, preferably the residue in the parent polypeptide is replaced with an alanine residue. However, the present invention contemplates replacement of the residue of the parent polypeptide with any other amino acid residue. The substitution may, for example, be a "conservative substitution". Such conservative substitutions are shown in Table 1 under the heading of "preferred substitution". More substantial changes may be achieved by making one

or more "exemplary substitutions" which are not the preferred substitution in Table 1.

-23-

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

TABLE 1

| IABLE 1 | | | | | | | |
|------------------|--|---------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|
| Original Residue | Exemplary Substitutions | Preferred Substitution | | | | | |
| Ala (A) | val; leu; ile | val | | | | | |
| Arg (R) | lys; gin; asn | lys | | | | | |
| Asn (N) | gin; his; lys; arg | gln | | | | | |
| Asp (D) | glu | glu | | | | | |
| Cys (C) | ser | ser | | | | | |
| Gln (Q) | asn | asn | | | | | |
| Glu (E) | asp | asp | | | | | |
| Gly (G) | pro; ala | ala | | | | | |
| His (H) | asn; gln; lys; arg | arg | | | | | |
| lle (I) | leu; val; met; ala; phe; norleucine | leu | | | | | |
| Leu (L) | norleucine; ile; val; met; ala; phe | ile | | | | | |
| Lys (K) | arg; gln; asn | arg | | | | | |
| Met (M) | leu; phe; ile | leu | | | | | |
| Phe (F) | leu; val; ile; ala; tyr | leu | | | | | |
| Pro (P) | ala | ala | | | | | |
| Ser (S) | thr | thr | | | | | |
| Thr (T) | ser | ser | | | | | |
| Trp (W) | tyr; phe | tyr | | | | | |
| Tyr (Y) | trp; phe; thr; ser | phe | | | | | |
| Val (V) | ile; leu; met; phe; ala; norleucine | leu | | | | | |

Substantial modifications in the biological properties of the Fc region may be accomplished by selecting substitutions that differ significantly in their effect on maintaining (a) the structure of the polypeptide backbone in the area of the substitution, for example, as a sheet or helical conformation, (b) the charge or hydrophobicity of the molecule at the target site, or (c) the bulk of the side chain. Naturally occurring residues are divided into groups based on common side-chain properties:

- (1) hydrophobic: norleucine, met, ala, val, leu, ile;
- 10 (2) neutral hydrophilic: cys, ser, thr,
 - (3) acidic: asp, glu;
 - (4) basic: asn, gln, his, lys, arg;

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

15

10

- (5) residues that influence chain orientation: gly, pro; and
- (6) aromatic: trp, tyr, phe.

Non-conservative substitutions will entail exchanging a member of one of these classes for a member of another class. Conservative and non-conservative amino acid substitutions are exemplified in Table 8 hereinbelow.

As is demonstrated in Example 4 herein, one can engineer an Fc region variant with altered binding affinity for one or more FcRs. As was shown in that Example, different classes of Fc region variants can be made **e.g.**, as summarized in the following table. Where the variant Fc region has more than one amino acid substitution, generally, but not necessarily, amino acid substitutions in the same class are combined to achieve the desired result.

TABLE 2
CLASSES OF Fc REGION VARIANTS

Class FcR binding property Position of Fc region substitution(s) reduced binding to all FcyR 238, 265, 269, 270, 297*, 327, 329 1B reduced binding to both FcyRII and 239, 294, 295, 303, 338, 373, 376, 416, FcvRIII 435 2 improved binding to both FcyRII and 256, 290, 312, 326, 330, 339*, 378, 430 FcyRIII 3 improved binding to FcyRII and no 255, 258, 267, 276, 280, 283, 285, 286, effect on FcyRIII binding 305, 307, 309, 315, 320, 331, 337, 398 4 improved binding to FcyRII and 268, 272, 301, 322, 340 reduced binding to FcyRIII 5 reduced binding to FcyRII and no 292, 324, 335, 414, 419, 438, 439 effect on FcyRIII binding 6 reduced binding to FcyRII and 298, 333 improved binding to FcyRIII 7 no effect on FcyRII binding and 248, 249, 252, 254, 278, 289, 293, 296, reduced binding to FcyRIII 338, 382, 388, 389, 434, 437 8 no effect on FcyRII binding and 334, 360 improved binding to FcyRIII

Aside from amino acid substitutions, the present invention contemplates other modifications of the parent Fc region amino acid sequence in order to generate an Fc region variant with altered effector function.

deglycosylated version

[#] Preferably combined with other Fc region modification(s) (e.g. as disclosed herein)

One may, for example, delete one or more amino acid residues of the Fc region in order to reduce binding to an FcR. Generally, one will delete one or more of the Fc region residues identified herein as effecting FcR binding (see Example 4 below) in order to generate such an Fc region variant. Generally, no more than one to about ten Fc region residues will be deleted according to this embodiment of the invention. The Fc region herein comprising one or more amino acid deletions will preferably retain at least about 80%, and preferably at least about 90%, and most preferably at least about 95%, of the parent Fc region or of a native sequence human Fc region.

One may also make amino acid insertion Fc region variants, which variants have altered effector function. For example, one may introduce at least one amino acid residue (e.g.) one to two amino acid residues and generally no more than ten residues) adjacent to one or more of the Fc region positions identified herein as impacting FcR binding. By "adjacent" is meant within one to two amino acid residues of a Fc region residue identified herein. Such Fc region variants may display enhanced or diminished FcR binding and/or ADCC activity. In order to generate such insertion variants, one may evaluate a co-crystal structure of a polypeptide comprising a binding region of an FcR (e.g. the extracellular domain of the FcR of interest) and the Fc region into which the amino acid residue(s) are to be inserted (see, for example, Delsenhofer, *BlochemIstry* 20(9):2361-2370 (1981); and Burmeister *et al.*, *Nature* 342:379-383, (1994)) in order to rationally design an Fc region variant with, e.g., improved FcR binding ability. Such insertion(s) will generally be made in an Fc region loop, but not in the secondary structure (*i.e.* in a β -strand) of the Fc region.

By introducing the appropriate amino acid sequence modifications in a parent Fc region, one can generate a variant Fc region which (a) mediates antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC) in the presence of human effector cells more effectively and/or (b) binds an Fc gamma receptor (FcγR) with better affinity than the parent polypeptide. Such Fc region variants will generally comprise at least one amino acid modification in the Fc region. Combining amino acid modifications is thought to be particularly desirable. For example, the variant Fc region may include two, three, four, five, etc substitutions therein, e.g. of the specific Fc region positions identified herein.

Preferably, the parent polypeptide Fc region is a human Fc region, e.g. a native sequence human Fc region human IgG1 (A and non-A allotypes), IgG2, IgG3 or IgG4 Fc region. Such sequences are shown in Fig. 23.

To generate an Fc region with improved ADCC activity, the parent polypeptide preferably has pre-existing ADCC activity, e.g., it comprises a human IgG1 or human IgG3 Fc region. In one embodiment, the variant with improved ADCC mediates ADCC substantially more effectively than

an antibody with a native sequence IgG1 or IgG3 Fc region and the antigen-binding region of the variant. Preferably, the variant comprises, or consists essentially of, substitutions of two or three of the residues at positions 298, 333 and 334 of the Fc region. Most preferably, residues at positions 298, 333 and 334 are substituted, (e.g. with alanine residues). Moreover, in order to generate the Fc region variant with improved ADCC activity, one will generally engineer an Fc region variant with improved binding affinity for FcyRIII, which is thought to be an important FcR for mediating ADCC. For example, one may introduce an amino acid modification (e.g. a substitution) into the parent Fc region at any one or more of amino acid positions 256, 290, 298, 312, 326, 330, 333, 334, 360, 378 or 430 to generate such a variant. The variant with improved binding affinity for FcyRIII may further have reduced binding affinity for FcyRII, especially reduced affinity for the inhibiting FcyRIIB receptor.

region.

The amino acid modification(s) are preferably introduced into the CH2 domain of a Fc region, since the experiments herein indicate that the CH2 domain is important for FcR binding activity. Moreover, unlike the teachings of the above-cited art, the instant application contemplates the introduction of a modification into a part of the Fc region other than in the lower hinge region thereof.

Useful amino acid positions for modification in order to generate a variant IgG Fc region with altered Fc gamma receptor (FcγR) binding affinity or activity include any one or more of amino acid positions 238, 239, 248, 249, 252, 254, 255, 256, 258, 265, 267, 268, 269, 270, 272, 276, 278, 280, 283, 285, 286, 289, 290, 292, 293, 294, 295, 296, 298, 301, 303, 305, 307, 309, 312, 315, 320, 322, 324, 326, 327, 329, 330, 331, 333, 334, 335, 337, 338, 340, 360, 373, 376, 378, 382, 388, 389, 398, 414, 416, 419, 430, 434, 435, 437, 438 or 439 of the Fc region. Preferably, the parent Fc region used as the template to generate such variants comprises a human IgG Fc region. Where residue 331 is substituted, the parent Fc region is preferably not human native sequence IgG3, or the variant Fc region comprising a substitution at position 331 preferably displays increased FcR binding, e.g. to FcγRII.

To generate an Fc region variant with reduced binding to the Fc γ R one may introduce an amino acid modification at any one or more of amino acid positions 238, 239, 248, 249, 252, 254, 265, 268, 269, 270, 272, 278, 289, 292, 293, 294, 295, 296, 298, 301, 303, 322, 324, 327, 329, 333, 335, 338, 340, 373, 376, 382, 388, 389, 414, 416, 419, 434, 435, 437, 438 or 439 of the Fc

Variants which display reduced binding to FcyRI, include those comprising an Fc region amino acid modification at any one or more of amino acid positions 238, 265, 269, 270, 327 or 329.

5

Variants which display reduced binding to FcyRII include those comprising an Fc region amino acid modification at any one or more of amino acid positions 238, 265, 269, 270, 292, 294, 295, 298, 303, 324, 327, 329, 333, 335, 338, 373, 376, 414, 416, 419, 435, 438 or 439.

10

Fc region variants which display reduced binding to Fc γ RIII include those comprising an Fc region amino acid modification at any one or more of amino acid positions 238, 239, 248, 249, 252, 254, 265, 268, 269, 270, 272, 278, 289, 293, 294, 295, 296, 301, 303, 322, 327, 329, 338, 340, 373, 376, 382, 388, 389, 416, 434, 435 or 437.

15

10

15

20

Variants with improved binding to one or more FcγRs may also be made. Such Fc region variants may comprise an amino acid modification at any one or more of amino acid positions 255, 256, 258, 267, 268, 272, 276, 280, 283, 285, 286, 290, 298, 301, 305, 307, 309, 312, 315, 320, 322, 326, 330, 331, 333, 334, 337, 340, 360, 378, 398 or 430 of the Fc region.

20

For example, the variant with improved Fc_YR binding activity may display increased binding to Fc_YRIII, and optionally may further display decreased binding to Fc_YRII; e.g. the variant may comprise an amino acid modification at position 298 and/or 333 of an Fc region.

25

Variants with increased binding to FcγRII include those comprising an amino acid modification at any one or more of amino acid positions 255, 256, 258, 267, 268, 272, 276, 280, 283, 285, 286, 290, 301, 305, 307, 309, 312, 315, 320, 322, 326, 330, 331, 337, 340, 378, 398 or 430 of an Fc region. Such variants may further display decreased binding to FcγRIII. For example, they may include an Fc region amino acid modification at any one or more of amino acid positions 268, 272, 298, 301, 322 or 340.

30

While it is preferred to alter binding to a FcγR, Fc region variants with altered binding affinity for the neonatal receptor (FcRn) are also contemplated herein. Fc region variants with improved affinity for FcRn are anticipated to have longer serum half-lives, and such molecules will have useful applications in methods of treating mammals where long half-life of the administered polypeptide is desired, e.g., to treat a chronic disease or disorder. Fc region variants with decreased FcRn binding affinity, on the contrary, are expected to have shorter half-lives, and such molecules may, for example, be administered to a mammal where a shortened circulation time may be advantageous, e.g. for *in vivo* diagnostic imaging or for polypeptides which have toxic side effects when left circulating in the blood stream for extended periods, etc. Fc region variants with decreased FcRn binding affinity are anticipated to be less likely to cross the placenta, and

40

35

thus may be utilized in the treatment of diseases or disorders in pregnant women.

45

Fc region variants with altered binding affinity for FcRn include those comprising an Fc region amino acid modification at any one or more of amino acid positions 238, 252, 253, 254, 255, 256, 265, 272, 286, 288, 303, 305, 307, 309, 311, 312, 317, 340, 356, 360, 362, 376, 378,

35

380, 382, 386, 388, 400, 413, 415, 424, 433, 434, 435, 436, 439 or 447. Those which display

reduced binding to FcRn will generally comprise an Fc region amino acid modification at any one or more of amino acid positions 252, 253, 254, 255, 288, 309, 386, 388, 400, 415, 433, 435, 436, 439 or 447; and those with increased binding to FcRn will usually comprise an Fc region amino acid modification at any one or more of amino acid positions 238, 256, 265, 272, 286, 303, 305, 307, 311, 312, 317, 340, 356, 360, 362, 376, 378, 380, 382, 413, 424 or 434.

The polypeptide variant(s) prepared as described above may be subjected to further

modifications, oftentimes depending on the intended use of the polypeptide. Such modifications may involve further alteration of the amino acid sequence (substitution, insertion and/or deletion of amino acid residues), fusion to heterologous polypeptide(s) and/or covalent modifications. Such "further modifications" may be made prior to, simultaneously with, or following, the amino acid modification(s) disclosed above which result in an alteration of Fc receptor binding and/or ADCC activity. In one embodiment, one may combine the Fc region modification herein with Fc region substitutions disclosed in the references cited in the "Related Art" section of this application.

Alternatively or additionally, it may be useful to combine the above amino acid modifications with one or more further amino acid modifications that alter C1q binding and/or complement dependent cytoxicity function of the Fc region.

The starting polypeptide of particular interest herein is usually one that binds to C1q and displays complement dependent cytotoxicity (CDC). The further amino acid substitutions described herein will generally serve to alter the ability of the starting polypeptide to bind to C1q and/or modify its complement dependent cytotoxicity function, e.g. to reduce and preferably abolish these effector functions. However, polypeptides comprising substitutions at one or more of the described positions with improved C1q binding and/or complement dependent cytotoxicity (CDC) function are contemplated herein. For example, the starting polypeptide may be unable to bind C1q and/or mediate CDC and may be modified according to the teachings herein such that it acquires these further effector functions. Moreover, polypeptides with pre-existing C1q binding activity, optionally further having the ability to mediate CDC may be modified such that one or both of these activities are enhanced.

To generate an Fc region with altered C1q binding and/or complement dependent cytotoxicity (CDC) function, the amino acid positions to be modified are generally selected from heavy chain positions 270, 322, 326, 327, 329, 331, 333, and 334, where the numbering of the residues in an IgG heavy chain is that of the EU index as in Kabat et al., Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest, 5th Ed. Public Health Service, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD (1991). In one embodiment, only one of the eight above-identified positions is altered in order to generate the polypeptide variant region with altered C1q binding and/or

5

10

15

20

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

complement dependent cytotoxicity (CDC) function. Preferably only residue 270, 329 or 322 is altered if this is the case. Alternatively, two or more of the above-identified positions are modified. If substitutions are to be combined, generally substitutions which enhance human C1q binding (e.g. at residue positions 326, 327, 333 and 334) or those which diminish human C1q binding (e.g., at residue positions 270, 322, 329 and 331) are combined. In the latter embodiment, all four positions (i.e., 270, 322, 329 and 331) may be substituted. Preferably, further substitutions at two, three or all of positions 326, 327, 333 or 334 are combined, optionally with other Fc region substitutions, to generate a polypeptide with improved human C1q binding and preferably improved CDC activity *In vitro* or *In vivo*.

Proline is conserved at position 329 in human IgG's. This residue is preferably replaced with alanine, however substitution with any other amino acid is contemplated, *e.g.*, serine, threonine, asparagine, glycine or valine.

Proline is conserved at position 331 in human IgG1, IgG2 and IgG3, but not IgG4 (which has a serine residue at position 331). Residue 331 is preferably replaced by alanine or another amino acid, **e.g.** serine (for IgG regions other than IgG4), glycine or valine.

Lysine 322 is conserved in human IgGs, and this residue is preferably replaced by an alanine residue, but substitution with any other amino acid residue is contemplated, e.g. serine, threonine, glycine or valine.

D270 is conserved in human IgGs, and this residue may be replaced by another amino acid residue, e.g. alanine, serine, threonine, glycine, valine, or lysine.

K326 is also conserved in human IgGs. This residue may be substituted with another residue including, but not limited to, valine, glutamic acid, alanine, glycine, aspartic acid, methlonine or tryptophan, with tryptophan being preferred.

Likewise, E333 is also conserved in human IgGs. E333 is preferably replaced by an amino acid residue with a smaller side chain volume, such as valine, glycine, alanine or serine, with serine being preferred.

K334 is conserved in human IgGs and may be substituted with another residue such as alanine or other residue.

In human IgG1 and IgG3, residue 327 is an alanine. In order to generate a variant with improved C1q binding, this alanine may be substituted with another residue such as glycine. In IgG2 and IgG4, residue 327 is a glycine and this may be replaced by alanine (or another residue) to diminish C1q binding.

As disclosed above, one can design an Fc region with altered effector function, e.g., by modifying C1q binding and/or FcR binding and thereby changing CDC activity and/or ADCC activity. For example, one can generate a variant Fc region with improved C1q binding and

improved FcyRIII binding; e.g. having both improved ADCC activity and improved CDC activity. Alternatively, where one desires that effector function be reduced or ablated, one may engineer a variant Fc region with reduced CDC activity and/or reduced ADCC activity. In other embodiments, one may increase only one of these activities, and optionally also reduce the other activity, e.g. to generate an Fc region variant with improved ADCC activity, but reduced CDC activity and vice versa.

With respect to further amino acid sequence alterations, any cysteine residue not involved in maintaining the proper conformation of the polypeptide variant also may be substituted, generally with serine, to improve the oxidative stability of the molecule and prevent aberrant cross linking.

Another type of amino acid substitution serves to alter the glycosylation pattern of the

polypeptide. This may be achieved by deleting one or more carbohydrate moleties found in the polypeptide, and/or adding one or more glycosylation sites that are not present in the polypeptide. Glycosylation of polypeptides is typically either N-linked or O-linked. N-linked refers to the attachment of the carbohydrate molety to the side chain of an asparagine residue. The tripeptide sequences asparagine-X-serine and asparagine-X-threonine, where X is any amino acid except proline, are the recognition sequences for enzymatic attachment of the carbohydrate molety to the asparagine side chain. Thus, the presence of either of these tripeptide sequences in a polypeptide creates a potential glycosylation site. O-linked glycosylation refers to the attachment of one of the sugars N-acceylgalactosamine, galactose, or xylose to a hydroxyamino acid, most commonly serine or threonine, although 5-hydroxyproline or 5-hydroxylysine may also be used. Addition of glycosylation sites to the polypeptide is conveniently accomplished by altering the amino acid sequence such that it contains one or more of the above-described tripeptide sequences (for N-linked glycosylation sites). The alteration may also be made by the addition of

Moreover, the class, subclass or allotype of the Fc region may be altered by one or more further amino acid substitutions to generate an Fc region with an amino acid sequence more homologous to a different class, subclass or allotype as desired. For example, a murine Fc region may be altered to generate an amino acid sequence more homologous to a human Fc region; a human non-A allotype IgG1 Fc region may be modified to achieve a human A allotype IgG1 Fc region etc. In one embodiment, the amino modification(s) herein which alter FcR binding and/or ADCC activity are made in the CH2 domain of the Fc region and the CH3 domain is deleted or

or substitution by, one or more serine or threonine residues to the sequence of the original polypeptide (for O-linked glycosylation sites). An exemplary glycosylation variant has an amino

acid substitution of residue Asn 297 of the heavy chain.

replaced with another dimerization domain. Preferably, however, the CH3 domain is retained (aside from amino acid modifications therein which alter effector function as herein disclosed).

The polypeptide variant may be subjected to one or more assays to evaluate any change in biological activity compared to the starting polypeptide.

Preferably the polypeptide variant essentially retains the ability to bind antigen compared to the nonvariant polypeptide, *i.e.* the binding capability is no worse than about 20 fold, e.g. no worse than about 5 fold of that of the nonvariant polypeptide. The binding capability of the polypeptide variant may be determined using techniques such as fluorescence activated cell sorting (FACS) analysis or radioimmunoprecipitation (RIA), for example.

The ability of the polypeptide variant to bind an FcR may be evaluated. Where the FcR is a high affinity Fc receptor, such as FcyRl, FcRn or FcyRlllA-V158, binding can be measured by titrating monomeric polypeptide variant and measuring bound polypeptide variant using an antibody which specifically binds to the polypeptide variant in a standard ELISA format (see Example 2 below). Another FcR binding assay for low affinity FcRs is described in Examples 1 and 4.

To assess ADCC activity of the polypeptide variant, an *in vitro* ADCC assay, such as that described in Example 4 may be performed using varying effector:target ratios. Useful "effector cells" for such assays include peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMC) and Natural Killer (NK) cells. Alternatively, or additionally, ADCC activity of the polypeptide variant may be assessed in vivo, e.g., in a animal model such as that disclosed in Clynes et al. PNAS (USA) 95:652-656 (1998).

The ability of the variant to bind C1q and mediate complement dependent cytotoxicity (CDC) may be assessed.

To determine C1q binding, a C1q binding ELISA may be performed. Briefly, assay plates may be coated overnight at 4° C with polypeptide variant or starting polypeptide (control) in coating buffer. The plates may then be washed and blocked. Following washing, an aliquot of human C1q may be added to each well and incubated for 2 hrs at room temperature. Following a further wash, 100 μ l of a sheep anti-complement C1q peroxidase conjugated antibody may be added to each well and incubated for 1 hour at room temperature. The plate may again be washed with wash buffer and 100 μ l of substrate buffer containing OPD (O-phenylenediamine dihydrochloride (Sigma)) may be added to each well. The oxidation reaction, observed by the appearance of a yellow color, may be allowed to proceed for 30 minutes and stopped by the addition of 100 μ l of 4.5 N H₂SO₄. The absorbance may then read at (492-405) nm.

An exemplary polypeptide variant is one that displays a "significant reduction in C1q binding" in this assay. This means that about $100\mu g/ml$ of the polypeptide variant displays about

50 fold or more reduction in C1q binding compared to 100μg/ml of a control antibody having a nonmutated IgG1 Fc region. In the most preferred embodiment, the polypeptide variant "does not bind C1q", *l.e.* 100μg/ml of the polypeptide variant displays about 100 fold or more reduction in C1q binding compared to 100μg/ml of the control antibody.

Another exemplary variant is one which "has a better binding affinity for human C1q than the parent polypeptide". Such a molecule may display, for example, about two-fold or more, and preferably about five-fold or more, improvement in human C1q binding compared to the parent polypeptide (e.g. at the IC₅₀ values for these two molecules). For example, human C1q binding may be about two-fold to about 500-fold, and preferably from about two-fold or from about five-fold to about 1000-fold improved compared to the parent polypeptide.

To assess complement activation, a complement dependent cytotoxicity (CDC) assay may be performed, e.g. as described in Gazzano-Santoro et al., J. Immunol. Methods 202:163 (1996). Briefly, various concentrations of the polypeptide variant and human complement may be diluted with buffer. Cells which express the antigen to which the polypeptide variant, diluted human complement and cells expressing the antigen may be added to a flat bottom tissue culture 96 well plate and allowed to incubate for 2 hrs at 37°C and 5% CO₂ to facilitate complement mediated cell lysis. 50 µl of alarmar blue (Accumed International) may then be added to each well and incubated overnight at 37°C. The absorbance is measured using a 96-well fluorometer with excitation at 530 nm and emission at 590 nm. The results may be expressed in relative fluorescence units (RFU). The sample concentrations may be computed from a standard curve and the percent activity as compared to nonvariant polypeptide is reported for the polypeptide variant of interest.

Yet another exemplary variant "does not activate complement". For example, 0.6 µg/ml of the polypeptide variant displays about 0-10% CDC activity in this assay compared to a 0.6 µg/ml of a control antibody having a nonmutated lgG1 Fc region. Preferably the variant does not appear to have any CDC activity in the above CDC assay.

The invention also pertains to a polypeptide variant with enhanced CDC compared to a parent polypeptide, e.g., displaying about two-fold to about 100-fold improvement in CDC activity in vitro or in vivo (e.g., at the IC₅₀ values for each molecule being compared).

A. Receptor Binding Assay and Immune Complex

A receptor binding assay has been developed herein which is particularly useful for determining binding of an analyte of interest to a receptor where the affinity of the analyte for the receptor is relatively weak, e.g. in the micromolar range as is the case for FcyRIIA, FcyRIIB, FcyRIIIA and FcyRIIIB. The method involves the formation of a molecular complex that has an improved avidity for the receptor of interest compared to the noncomplexed analyte. The

5

preferred molecular complex is an immune complex comprising; (a) an Fc region-containing polypeptide (such as an antibody or an immunoadhesin); (b) a first target molecule which comprises at least two binding sites for the Fc region-containing polypeptide; and (c) a second target molecule which comprises at least two binding sites for the first target molecule.

10

15

In Example 1 below, the Fc region-containing polypeptide is an anti-IgE antibody, such as the E27 antibody (Figs. 4A-4B). E27, when mixed with human IgE at an 1:1 molar ratio, forms a stable hexamer consisting of three E27 molecules and three IgE molecules. In Example 1 below, the "first target molecule" is a chimeric form of IgE in which the Fab portion of an anti-VEGF antibody is fused to the human IgE Fc portion and the "second target molecule" is the antigen to which the Fab binds (i.e. VEGF). Each molecule of IgE binds two molecules of VEGF. VEGF also binds two molecules of IgE per molecule of VEGF. When recombinant human VEGF was added at a 2:1 molar ratio to IgE:E27 hexamers, the hexamers were linked into larger molecular weight complexes via the IgE:VEGF interaction (Fig. 5). The Fc region of the anti-IgE antibody of the resultant immune complex binds to FcR with higher avidity than either

20

uncomplexed anti-lgE or anti-lgE:lgE hexamers. Other forms of molecular complexes for use in the receptor assay are contemplated.

25

30

35

Examples comprising only an Fc region-containing polypeptide:first target molecule combination include an immunoadhesin:ligand combination such as VEGF receptor (KDR)immunoadhesin:VEGF and a full-length bispecific antibody (bsAb):first target molecule. A further

20

25

30

35

5

10

15

example of an Fc region-containing polypeptide:first target molecule:second target molecule combination include a nonblocking antibody:soluble receptor:ligand combination such as anti-Trk antibody:soluble Trk receptor:neurotrophin (Urfer et al. J. Biol. Chem. 273(10):5829-5840

(1998)).

Aside from use in a receptor binding assay, the immune complexes described above have further uses including evaluation of Fc region-containing polypeptide function and immune complex clearance in vivo. Hence, the immune complex may be administered to a mammal (e.g. in a pre-clinical animal study) and evaluated for its half-life etc.

40

To determine receptor binding, a polypeptide comprising at least the binding domain of the receptor of interest (e.g. the extracellular domain of an α subunit of an FcR) may be coated on solid phase, such as an assay plate. The binding domain of the receptor alone or a receptorfusion protein may be coated on the plate using standard procedures. Examples of receptorfusion proteins include receptor-glutathione S-transferase (GST) fusion protein, receptor-chitin binding domain fusion protein, receptor-hexaHis tag fusion protein (coated on glutathione, chitin, and nickel coated plates, respectively). Alternatively, a capture molecule may be coated on the

50

45

assay plate and used to bind the receptor-fusion protein via the non-receptor portion of the fusion

5

10

protein. Examples include anti-hexaHis F(ab')₂ coated on the assay plate used to capture receptor-hexaHis tail fusion or anti-GST antibody coated on the assay plate used to capture a receptor-GST fusion. In other embodiments, binding to cells expressing at least the binding domain of the receptor may be evaluated. The cells may be naturally occurring hematopoietic cells that express the FcR of interest or may be transformed with nucleic acid encoding the FcR or a binding domain thereof such that the binding domain is expressed at the surface of the cell to be tested.

15

10

15

20

25

30

The immune complex described hereinabove is added to the receptor-coated plates and incubated for a sufficient period of time such that the analyte binds to the receptor. Plates may then be washed to remove unbound complexes, and binding of the analyte may be detected according to known methods. For example, binding may be detected using a reagent (e.g. an antibody or fragment thereof) which binds specifically to the analyte, and which is optionally conjugated with a detectable label (detectable labels and methods for conjugating them to polypeptides are described below in the section entitled "Non-Therapeutic Uses for the Polypeptide Variant").

25

30

35

20

As a matter of convenience, the reagents can be provided in an assay kit, i.e., a packaged combination of reagents, for combination with the analyte in assaying the ability of the analyte to bind to a receptor of interest. The components of the kit will generally be provided in predetermined ratios. The kit may provide the first target molecule and/or the second target molecule, optionally complexed together. The kit may further include assay plates coated with the receptor or a binding domain thereof (e.g. the extracellular domain of the α subunit of an FcR). Usually, other reagents, such as an antibody that binds specifically to the analyte to be assayed, labeled directly or indirectly with an enzymatic label, will also be provided in the kit. Where the detectable label is an enzyme, the kit will include substrates and cofactors required by the enzyme (e.g. a substrate precursor which provides the detectable chromophore or fluorophore). In addition, other additives may be included such as stabilizers, buffers (e.g. assay and/or wash lysis buffer) and the like. The relative amounts of the various reagents may be varied widely to provide for concentrations in solution of the reagents that substantially optimize the sensitivity of the assay. Particularly, the reagents may be provided as dry powders, usually lyophilized, including excipients that on dissolution will provide a reagent solution having the appropriate concentration. The kit also suitably includes instructions for carrying out the assay.

40

45

B. Antibody Preparation

In the preferred embodiment of the invention, the Fc region-containing polypeptide which is modified according to the teachings herein is an antibody. Techniques for producing antibodies follow:

35

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

10

15

20

25

30

(I) Antigen selection and preparation

Where the polypeptide is an antibody, it is directed against an antigen of interest. Preferably, the antigen is a biologically important polypeptide and administration of the antibody to a mammal suffering from a disease or disorder can result in a therapeutic benefit in that mammal. However, antibodies directed against nonpolypeptide antigens (such as tumorassociated glycolipid antigens; see US Patent 5,091,178) are also contemplated.

Where the antigen is a polypeptide, it may be a transmembrane molecule (e.g. receptor) or ligand such as a growth factor. Exemplary antigens include molecules such as renin; a growth hormone, including human growth hormone and bovine growth hormone; growth hormone releasing factor; parathyroid hormone; thyroid stimulating hormone; lipoproteins; alpha-1antitrypsin; insulin A-chain; insulin B-chain; proinsulin; follicle stimulating hormone; calcitonin; lutelnizing hormone; glucagon; clotting factors such as factor VIIIC, factor IX, tissue factor (TF), and von Willebrands factor; anti-clotting factors such as Protein C; atrial natriuretic factor; lung surfactant; a plasminogen activator, such as urokinase or human urine or tissue-type plasminogen activator (t-PA); bombesin; thrombin; hemopoietic growth factor, tumor necrosis factor-alpha and -beta; enkephalinase; RANTES (regulated on activation normally T-cell expressed and secreted); human macrophage inflammatory protein (MIP-1-alpha); a serum albumin such as human serum albumin; Muellerian-inhibiting substance; relaxin A-chain; relaxin B-chain; prorelaxin; mouse gonadotropin-associated peptide; a microbial protein, such as beta-lactamase; DNase; lgE; a cytotoxic T-lymphocyte associated antigen (CTLA), such as CTLA-4; inhibin; activin; vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF); receptors for hormones or growth factors; protein A or D; rheumatoid factors; a neurotrophic factor such as bone-derived neurotrophic factor (BDNF), neurotrophin-3, -4, -5, or -6 (NT-3, NT-4, NT-5, or NT-6), or a nerve growth factor such as NGF-B; platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF); fibroblast growth factor such as aFGF and bFGF; epidermal growth factor (EGF); transforming growth factor (TGF) such as TGF-alpha and TGFbeta, including TGF-β1, TGF-β2, TGF-β3, TGF-β4, or TGF-β5; Insulin-like growth factor-I and -II (IGF-I and IGF-II); des(1-3)-IGF-I (brain IGF-I), insulin-like growth factor binding proteins; CD proteins such as CD3, CD4, CD8, CD19 and CD20; erythropoietin; osteoinductive factors; immunotoxins; a bone morphogenetic protein (BMP); an interferon such as interferon-alpha, -beta, and -gamma; colony stimulating factors (CSFs), e.g., M-CSF, GM-CSF, and G-CSF; interleukins (ILs), e.g., IL-1 to IL-10; superoxide dismutase; T-cell receptors; surface membrane proteins; decay accelerating factor; viral antigen such as, for example, a portion of the AIDS envelope; transport proteins; homing receptors; addressins; regulatory proteins; integrins such as CD11a, CD11b, CD11c, CD18, an ICAM, VLA-4 and VCAM; a tumor associated antigen such as HER2. HER3 or HER4 receptor; and fragments of any of the above-listed polypeptides.

Preferred molecular targets for antibodies encompassed by the present invention include CD proteins such as CD3, CD4, CD8, CD19, CD20 and CD34; members of the ErbB receptor family such as the EGF receptor, HER2, HER3 or HER4 receptor; cell adhesion molecules such as LFA-1, Mac1, p150.95, VLA-4, ICAM-1, VCAM, $\alpha 4/\beta 7$ integrin, and $\alpha v/\beta 3$ integrin including either α or β subunits thereof (e.g. anti-CD11a, anti-CD18 or anti-CD11b antibodies); growth factors such as VEGF; tissue factor (TF); alpha interferon (α -IFN); an interleukin, such as IL-8; IgE; blood group antigens; flk2/flt3 receptor; obesity (OB) receptor; *mpl* receptor; CTLA-4; protein C etc.

Soluble antigens or fragments thereof, optionally conjugated to other molecules, can be used as immunogens for generating antibodies. For transmembrane molecules, such as receptors, fragments of these (e.g. the extracellular domain of a receptor) can be used as the immunogen. Alternatively, cells expressing the transmembrane molecule can be used as the immunogen. Such cells can be derived from a natural source (e.g. cancer cell lines) or may be cells which have been transformed by recombinant techniques to express the transmembrane molecule. Other antigens and forms thereof useful for preparing antibodies will be apparent to those in the art.

(ii) Polyclonal antibodles

Polyclonal antibodies are preferably raised in animals by multiple subcutaneous (sc) or intraperitoneal (ip) injections of the relevant antigen and an adjuvant. It may be useful to conjugate the relevant antigen to a protein that is immunogenic in the species to be immunized, e.g., keyhole limpet hemocyanin, serum albumin, bovine thyroglobulin, or soybean trypsin inhibitor using a bifunctional or derivatizing agent, for example, maleimidobenzoyl sulfosuccinimide ester (conjugation through cysteine residues), N-hydroxysuccinimide (through lysine residues), glutaraldehyde, succinic anhydride, SOCI₂, or R¹N=C=NR, where R and R¹ are different alkyl groups.

combining, e.g., $100 \mu g$ or $5 \mu g$ of the protein or conjugate (for rabbits or mice, respectively) with 3 volumes of Freund's complete adjuvant and injecting the solution intradermally at multiple sites. One month later the animals are boosted with 1/5 to 1/10 the original amount of peptide or conjugate in Freund's complete adjuvant by subcutaneous injection at multiple sites. Seven to 14 days later the animals are bled and the serum is assayed for antibody titer. Animals are boosted until the titer plateaus. Preferably, the animal is boosted with the conjugate of the same antigen, but conjugated to a different protein and/or through a different cross-linking reagent.

Animals are immunized against the antigen, immunogenic conjugates, or derivatives by

Conjugates also can be made in recombinant cell culture as protein fusions. Also, aggregating agents such as alum are suitably used to enhance the immune response.

(III) Monocional antibodies

Monoclonal antibodies may be made using the hybridoma method first described by Kohler *et al.*, *Nature*, 256:495 (1975), or may be made by recombinant DNA methods (U.S. Patent No. 4,816,567).

In the hybridoma method, a mouse or other appropriate host animal, such as a hamster or macaque monkey, is immunized as hereinabove described to elicit lymphocytes that produce or are capable of producing antibodies that will specifically bind to the protein used for immunization. Alternatively, lymphocytes may be immunized *in vitro*. Lymphocytes then are fused with myeloma cells using a suitable fusing agent, such as polyethylene glycol, to form a hybridoma cell (Goding, *Monoclonal Antibodies: Principles and Practice*, pp.59-103 (Academic Press, 1986)).

The hybridoma cells thus prepared are seeded and grown in a suitable culture medium that preferably contains one or more substances that inhibit the growth or survival of the unfused, parental myeloma cells. For example, if the parental myeloma cells lack the enzyme hypoxanthine guanine phosphoribosyl transferase (HGPRT or HPRT), the culture medium for the hybridomas typically will include hypoxanthine, aminopterin, and thymidine (HAT medium), which substances prevent the growth of HGPRT-deficient cells.

Preferred myeloma cells are those that fuse efficiently, support stable high-level production of antibody by the selected antibody-producing cells, and are sensitive to a medium such as HAT medium. Among these, preferred myeloma cell lines are murine myeloma lines, such as those derived from MOPC-21 and MPC-11 mouse tumors available from the Salk Institute Cell Distribution Center, San Diego, California USA, and SP-2 or X63-Ag8-653 cells available from the American Type Culture Collection, Rockville, Maryland USA. Human myeloma and mouse-human heteromyeloma cell lines also have been described for the production of human monoclonal antibodies (Kozbor, *J. Immunol.*, 133:3001 (1984); Brodeur et al., Monoclonal Antibody Production Techniques and Applications, pp. 51-63 (Marcel Dekker, Inc., New York, 1987)).

Culture medium in which hybridoma cells are growing is assayed for production of monoclonal antibodies directed against the antigen. Preferably, the binding specificity of monoclonal antibodies produced by hybridoma cells is determined by immunoprecipitation or by an *in vitro* binding assay, such as radioimmunoassay (RIA) or enzyme-linked immunoabsorbent assay (ELISA).

After hybridoma cells are identified that produce antibodies of the desired specificity, affinity, and/or activity, the clones may be subcloned by limiting dilution procedures and grown by standard methods (Goding, *Monoclonal Antibodies: Principles and Practice*, pp.59-103

(Academic Press, 1986)). Suitable culture media for this purpose include, for example, D-MEM or RPMI-1640 medium. In addition, the hybridoma cells may be grown *in vivo* as ascites tumors in an animal.

The monoclonal antibodies secreted by the subclones are suitably separated from the culture medium, ascites fluid, or serum by conventional immunoglobulin purification procedures such as, for example, protein A-Sepharose, hydroxylapatite chromatography, gel electrophoresis, dialysis, or affinity chromatography.

DNA encoding the monoclonal antibodies is readily isolated and sequenced using conventional procedures (e.g., by using oligonucleotide probes that are capable of binding specifically to genes encoding the heavy and light chains of the monoclonal antibodies). The hybridoma cells serve as a preferred source of such DNA. Once isolated, the DNA may be placed into expression vectors, which are then transfected into host cells such as *E. coll* cells, simian COS cells, Chinese hamster ovary (CHO) cells, or myeloma cells that do not otherwise produce immunoglobulin protein, to obtain the synthesis of monoclonal antibodies in the recombinant host cells. Recombinant production of antibodies will be described in more detail below.

In a further embodiment, antibodies or antibody fragments can be isolated from antibody phage libraries generated using the techniques described in McCafferty et al., Nature, 348:552-554 (1990). Clackson et al., Nature, 352:624-628 (1991) and Marks et al., J. Mol. Biol., 222:581-597 (1991) describe the isolation of murine and human antibodies, respectively, using phage libraries. Subsequent publications describe the production of high affinity (nM range) human antibodies by chain shuffling (Marks et al., Bio/Technology, 10:779-783 (1992)), as well as combinatorial infection and in vivo recombination as a strategy for constructing very large phage libraries (Waterhouse et al., Nuc. Acids. Res., 21:2265-2266 (1993)). Thus, these techniques are viable alternatives to traditional monoclonal antibody hybridoma techniques for isolation of monoclonal antibodies.

The DNA also may be modified, for example, by substituting the coding sequence for human heavy- and light-chain constant domains in place of the homologous murine sequences (U.S. Patent No. 4,816,567; Morrison, et al., Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. USA, 81:6851 (1984)), or by covalently joining to the immunoglobulin coding sequence all or part of the coding sequence for

Typically such non-immunoglobulin polypeptides are substituted for the constant domains of an antibody, or they are substituted for the variable domains of one antigen-combining site of an antibody to create a chimeric bivalent antibody comprising one antigen-combining site having specificity for an antigen and another antigen-combining site having specificity for a different

antigen.

a non-immunoglobulin polypeptide.

(iv) Humanized and human antibodies

A humanized antibody has one or more amino acid residues introduced into it from a source which is non-human. These non-human amino acid residues are often referred to as "import" residues, which are typically taken from an "import" variable domain. Humanization can be essentially performed following the method of Winter and co-workers (Jones et al., Nature, 321:522-525 (1986); Riechmann et al., Nature, 332:323-327 (1988); Verhoeyen et al., Science, 239:1534-1536 (1988)), by substituting rodent CDRs or CDR sequences for the corresponding sequences of a human antibody. Accordingly, such "humanized" antibodies are chimeric antibodies (U.S. Patent No. 4,816,567) wherein substantially less than an intact human variable domain has been substituted by the corresponding sequence from a non-human species. In practice, humanized antibodies are typically human antibodies in which some CDR residues and possibly some FR residues are substituted by residues from analogous sites in rodent antibodies.

The choice of human variable domains, both light and heavy, to be used in making the humanized antibodies is very important to reduce antigenicity. According to the so-called "best-fit" method, the sequence of the variable domain of a rodent antibody is screened against the entire library of known human variable-domain sequences. The human sequence which is closest to that of the rodent is then accepted as the human framework (FR) for the humanized antibody (Sims et al., J. Immunol., 151:2296 (1993); Chothia et al., J. Mol. Biol., 196:901 (1987)). Another method uses a particular framework derived from the consensus sequence of all human antibodies of a particular subgroup of light or heavy chains. The same framework may be used for several different humanized antibodies (Carter et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Scl. USA, 89:4285 (1992); Presta et al., J. Immnol., 151:2623 (1993)).

It is further important that antibodies be humanized with retention of high affinity for the antigen and other favorable biological properties. To achieve this goal, according to a preferred method, humanized antibodies are prepared by a process of analysis of the parental sequences and various conceptual humanized products using three-dimensional models of the parental and humanized sequences. Three-dimensional immunoglobulin models are commonly available and are familiar to those skilled in the art. Computer programs are available which illustrate and display probable three-dimensional conformational structures of selected candidate immunoglobulin sequences. Inspection of these displays permits analysis of the likely role of the residues in the functioning of the candidate immunoglobulin sequence, *i.e.*, the analysis of residues that influence the ability of the candidate immunoglobulin to bind its antigen. In this way, FR residues can be selected and combined from the recipient and import sequences so that the desired antibody characteristic, such as increased affinity for the target antigen(s), is achieved.

5

In general, the CDR residues are directly and most substantially involved in influencing antigen binding.

Alternatively, it is now possible to produce transgenic animals (e.g., mice) that are

10

,

15

20

25

30

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

capable, upon immunization, of producing a full repertoire of human antibodies in the absence of endogenous immunoglobulin production. For example, it has been described that the homozygous deletion of the antibody heavy-chain joining region (J_H) gene in chimeric and germline mutant mice results in complete inhibition of endogenous antibody production. Transfer of the human germ-line immunoglobulin gene array in such germ-line mutant mice will result in the production of human antibodies upon antigen challenge. See, e.g., Jakobovits et al., Proc. Natl.

Acad. Sci. USA, 90:2551 (1993); Jakobovits et al., Nature, 362:255-258 (1993); Bruggermann et al., Year in Immuno., 7:33 (1993); and Duchosal et al. Nature 355:258 (1992). Human antibodies can also be derived from phage-display libraries (Hoogenboom et al., J. Mol. Biol.,

227:381 (1991); Marks *et al., J. Mol. Biol.*, 222:581-597 (1991); Vaughan *et al. Nature Biotech* 14:309 (1996)).

(v) Multispecific antibodies

Multispecific antibodies have binding specificities for at least two different antigens. While such molecules normally will only bind two antigens (I.e. bispecific antibodies, BsAbs), antibodies with additional specificities such as trispecific antibodies are encompassed by this expression when used herein. Examples of BsAbs include those with one arm directed against a tumor cell antigen and the other arm directed against a cytotoxic trigger molecule such as anti-FcyRl/anti-CD15, anti-p185HER2/FcyRIII (CD16), anti-CD3/anti-malignant B-cell (1D10), anti-CD3/antip185HER2, anti-CD3/anti-p97, anti-CD3/anti-renal cell carcinoma, anti-CD3/anti-OVCAR-3, anti-CD3/L-D1 (anti-colon carcinoma), anti-CD3/anti-melanocyte stimulating hormone analog, anti-EGF receptor/anti-CD3, anti-CD3/anti-CAMA1, anti-CD3/anti-CD19, anti-CD3/MoV18, anti-neural cell ahesion molecule (NCAM)/anti-CD3, anti-folate binding protein (FBP)/anti-CD3, anti-pan carcinoma associated antigen (AMOC-31)/anti-CD3; BsAbs with one arm which binds specifically to a tumor antigen and one arm which binds to a toxin such as anti-saporin/anti-ld-1, anti-CD22/anti-saporin, anti-CD7/anti-saporin, anti-CD38/anti-saporin, anti-CEA/anti-ricin A chain, antiinterferon-α (IFN-α)/anti-hybridoma idiotype, anti-CEA/anti-vinca alkaloid; BsAbs for converting enzyme activated prodrugs such as anti-CD30/anti-alkaline phosphatase (which catalyzes conversion of mitomycin phosphate prodrug to mitomycin alcohol); BsAbs which can be used as fibrinolytic agents such as anti-fibrin/anti-tissue plasminogen activator (tPA), anti-fibrin/antiurokinase-type plasminogen activator (uPA); BsAbs for targeting immune complexes to cell surface receptors such as anti-low density lipoprotein (LDL)/anti-Fc receptor (e.g. FcyRI, FcyRII or FcyRIII); BsAbs for use in therapy of infectious diseases such as anti-CD3/anti-herpes simplex

virus (HSV), anti-T-cell receptor.CD3 complex/anti-influenza, anti-FcγR/anti-HIV; BsAbs for tumor detection *in vitro* or *in vivo* such as anti-CEA/anti-EOTUBE, anti-CEA/anti-DPTA, anti-p185^{HER2}/anti-hapten; BsAbs as vaccine adjuvants; and BsAbs as diagnostic tools such as anti-rabbit IgG/anti-ferritin, anti-horse radish peroxidase (HRP)/anti-hormone, anti-somatostatin/anti-substance P, anti-HRP/anti-FITC, anti-CEA/anti-Gpalactosidase. Examples of trispecific antibodies include anti-CD3/anti-CD4/anti-CD37, anti-CD3/anti-CD37 and anti-CD3/anti-CD8/anti-CD37. Bispecific antibodies can be prepared as full length antibodies or antibody fragments (*e.g.* F(ab')₂ bispecific antibodies).

Methods for making bispecific antibodies are known in the art. Traditional production of full length bispecific antibodies is based on the coexpression of two immunoglobulin heavy chainlight chain pairs, where the two chains have different specificities (Millstein et al., Nature, 305:537-539 (1983)). Because of the random assortment of immunoglobulin heavy and light chains, these hybridomas (quadromas) produce a potential mixture of 10 different antibody molecules, of which only one has the correct bispecific structure. Purification of the correct molecule, which is usually done by affinity chromatography steps, is rather cumbersome, and the product yields are low. Similar procedures are disclosed in WO 93/08829, and in Traunecker et al., EMBO J., 10:3655-3659 (1991).

According to a different approach, antibody variable domains with the desired binding

specificities (antibody-antigen combining sites) are fused to immunoglobulin constant domain sequences. The fusion preferably is with an immunoglobulin heavy chain constant domain, comprising at least part of the hinge, CH2, and CH3 regions. It is preferred to have the first heavy-chain constant region (CH1) containing the site necessary for light chain binding, present in at least one of the fusions. DNAs encoding the immunoglobulin heavy chain fusions and, if desired, the immunoglobulin light chain, are inserted into separate expression vectors, and are co-transfected into a suitable host organism. This provides for great flexibility in adjusting the mutual proportions of the three polypeptide fragments in embodiments when unequal ratios of the three polypeptide chains used in the construction provide the optimum yields. It is, however,

possible to insert the coding sequences for two or all three polypeptide chains in one expression vector when the expression of at least two polypeptide chains in equal ratios results in high yields or when the ratios are of no particular significance.

In a preferred embodiment of this approach, the bispecific antibodies are composed of a hybrid immunoglobulin heavy chain with a first binding specificity in one arm, and a hybrid immunoglobulin heavy chain-light chain pair (providing a second binding specificity) in the other arm. It was found that this asymmetric structure facilitates the separation of the desired bispecific compound from unwanted immunoglobulin chain combinations, as the presence of an

5

10

15

immunoglobulin light chain in only one half of the bispecific molecule provides for a facile way of separation. This approach is disclosed in WO 94/04690. For further details of generating bispecific antibodies see, for example, Suresh et al., Methods in Enzymology, 121:210 (1986). According to another approach described in W096/27011, the interface between a pair of antibody molecules can be engineered to maximize the percentage of heterodimers which are recovered from recombinant cell culture. The preferred interface comprises at least a part of the C_H3 domain of an antibody constant domain. In this method, one or more small amino acid side chains from the interface of the first antibody molecule are replaced with larger side chains (e.g. tyrosine or tryptophan). Compensatory "cavities" of identical or similar size to the large side chain(s) are created on the interface of the second antibody molecule by replacing large amino acid side chains with smaller ones (e.g. alanine or threonine). This provides a mechanism for increasing the yield of the heterodimer over other unwanted end-products such as homodimers.

20

Bispecific antibodies include cross-linked or "heteroconjugate" antibodies. For example, one of the antibodies in the heteroconjugate can be coupled to avidin, the other to biotin. Such antibodies have, for example, been proposed to target immune system cells to unwanted cells (US Patent No. 4,676,980), and for treatment of HIV infection (WO 91/00360, WO 92/200373, and EP 03089). Heteroconjugate antibodies may be made using any convenient cross-linking methods. Suitable cross-linking agents are well known in the art, and are disclosed in US Patent

25

No. 4,676,980, along with a number of cross-linking techniques.

Antibodies with more than two valencies are contempts

30

Antibodies with more than two valencies are contemplated. For example, trispecific antibodies can be prepared. Tutt et al. J. Immunol. 147: 60 (1991).

While the polypentide of interest herein is preferably an antibody other For region.

35

While the polypeptide of interest herein is preferably an antibody, other Fc region-containing polypeptides which can be modified according to the methods described herein are contemplated. An example of such a molecule is an immunoadhesin.

25

30

35

C. Immunoadhesin Preparation

40

The simplest and most straightforward immunoadhesin design combines the binding domain(s) of the adhesin (e.g. the extracellular domain (ECD) of a receptor) with the Fc region of an immunoglobulin heavy chain. Ordinarily, when preparing the immunoadhesins of the present invention, nucleic acid encoding the binding domain of the adhesin will be fused C-terminally to nucleic acid encoding the N-terminus of an immunoglobulin constant domain sequence, however N-terminal fusions are also possible.

45

Typically, in such fusions the encoded chimeric polypeptide will retain at least functionally active hinge, $C_{\rm H}2$ and $C_{\rm H}3$ domains of the constant region of an immunoglobulin heavy chain. Fusions are also made to the C-terminus of the Fc portion of a constant domain, or immediately N-terminal to the $C_{\rm H}1$ of the heavy chain or the corresponding region of the light chain. The

5

precise site at which the fusion is made is not critical; particular sites are well known and may be selected in order to optimize the biological activity, secretion, or binding characteristics of the immunoadhesin.

10

In a preferred embodiment, the adhesin sequence is fused to the N-terminus of the Fc region of immunoglobulin G_1 (Ig G_1). It is possible to fuse the entire heavy chain constant region to the adhesin sequence. However, more preferably, a sequence beginning in the hinge region just upstream of the papain cleavage site which defines IgG Fc chemically (*i.e.* residue 216, taking the first residue of heavy chain constant region to be 114), or analogous sites of other immunoglobulins is used in the fusion. In a particularly preferred embodiment, the adhesin amino acid sequence is fused to (a) the hinge region and C_H2 and C_H3 or (b) the C_H1 , hinge, C_H2 and C_H3 domains, of an IgG heavy chain.

20

15

For bispecific immunoadhesins, the immunoadhesins are assembled as multimers, and particularly as heterodimers or heterotetramers. Generally, these assembled immunoglobulins will have known unit structures. A basic four chain structural unit is the form in which IgG, IgD, and IgE exist. A four chain unit is repeated in the higher molecular weight immunoglobulins; IgM generally exists as a pentamer of four basic units held together by disulfide bonds. IgA globulin, and occasionally IgG globulin, may also exist in multimeric form in serum. In the case of multimer, each of the four units may be the same or different.

25

30

Various exemplary assembled immunoadhesins within the scope herein are schematically diagrammed below:

20

25

(b) ACH-(ACH, ACL-ACH, ACL-VHCH, or VLCL-ACH);

35

(c) AC_L-AC_H-(AC_L-AC_H, AC_L-V_HC_H, V_LC_L-AC_H, or V_LC_L-V_HC_H)

(d) $AC_L-V_HC_{H-}(AC_H, or AC_L-V_HC_H, or V_LC_L-AC_H)$;

(e) V_LC_L - AC_H -(AC_L - V_HC_H , or V_LC_L - AC_H); and

 $(f) (A-Y)_n - (V_L C_L - V_H C_H)_2$

40

45

wherein each A represents identical or different adhesin amino acid sequences;

V_L is an immunoglobulin light chain variable domain;

V_H is an immunoglobulin heavy chain variable domain;

30 C_L is an immunoglobulin light chain constant domain;

C_H is an immunoglobulin heavy chain constant domain; n is an integer greater than 1;

Y designates the residue of a covalent cross-linking agent.

to the interest of the life formal and the life of the

50

In the interests of brevity, the foregoing structures only show key features; they do not indicate joining (J) or other domains of the immunoglobulins, nor are disulfide bonds shown.

5

However, where such domains are required for binding activity, they shall be constructed to be present in the ordinary locations which they occupy in the immunoglobulin molecules.

Alternatively, the adhesin sequences can be inserted between immunoglobulin heavy

10

chain and light chain sequences, such that an immunoglobulin comprising a chimeric heavy chain is obtained. In this embodiment, the adhesin sequences are fused to the 3' end of an immunoglobulin heavy chain in each arm of an immunoglobulin, either between the hinge and the $C_{H}2$ domain, or between the $C_{H}2$ and $C_{H}3$ domains. Similar constructs have been reported by

Hoogenboom, et al., Mol. Immunol. 28:1027-1037 (1991).

15

Although the presence of an immunoglobulin light chain is not required in the immunoadhesins of the present invention, an immunoglobulin light chain might be present either covalently associated to an adhesin-immunoglobulin heavy chain fusion polypeptide, or directly fused to the adhesin. In the former case, DNA encoding an immunoglobulin light chain is typically coexpressed with the DNA encoding the adhesin-immunoglobulin heavy chain fusion protein. Upon secretion, the hybrid heavy chain and the light chain will be covalently associated to provide an immunoglobulin-like structure comprising two disulfide-linked immunoglobulin heavy chain-light chain pairs. Methods suitable for the preparation of such structures are, for example, disclosed in U.S. Patent No. 4,816,557, issued 28 March 1989.

25

20

Immunoadhesins are most conveniently constructed by fusing the cDNA sequence encoding the adhesin portion in-frame to an immunoglobulin cDNA sequence. However, fusion to genomic immunoglobulin fragments can also be used (see, e.g. Aruffo et al., Cell 61:1303-1313 (1990); and Stamenkovic et al., Cell 66:1133-1144 (1991)). The latter type of fusion requires the presence of Ig regulatory sequences for expression. cDNAs encoding IgG heavy-chain constant regions can be isolated based on published sequences from cDNA libraries derived from spleen or peripheral blood lymphocytes, by hybridization or by polymerase chain reaction (PCR) techniques. The cDNAs encoding the "adhesin" and the immunoglobulin parts of the immunoadhesin are inserted in tandem into a plasmid vector that directs efficient

30

35

20

30

40

D. Vectors, Host Cells and Recombinant Methods

expression in the chosen host cells.

45

The invention also provides isolated nucleic acid encoding a polypeptide variant as disclosed herein, vectors and host cells comprising the nucleic acid, and recombinant techniques for the production of the polypeptide variant.

35

For recombinant production of the polypeptide variant, the nucleic acid encoding it is isolated and inserted into a replicable vector for further cloning (amplification of the DNA) or for expression. DNA encoding the polypeptide variant is readily isolated and sequenced using conventional procedures (e.g., by using oligonucleotide probes that are capable of binding

specifically to genes encoding the polypeptide variant). Many vectors are available. The vector components generally include, but are not limited to, one or more of the following: a signal sequence, an origin of replication, one or more marker genes, an enhancer element, a promoter, and a transcription termination sequence.

(i) Signal sequence component

--

The polypeptide variant of this invention may be produced recombinantly not only directly, but also as a fusion polypeptide with a heterologous polypeptide, which is preferably a signal sequence or other polypeptide having a specific cleavage site at the N-terminus of the mature protein or polypeptide. The heterologous signal sequence selected preferably is one that is recognized and processed (*i.e.*, cleaved by a signal peptidase) by the host cell. For prokaryotic host cells that do not recognize and process the native polypeptide variant signal sequence, the signal sequence is substituted by a prokaryotic signal sequence selected, for example, from the group of the alkaline phosphatase, penicillinase, lpp, or heat-stable enterotoxin II leaders. For yeast secretion the native signal sequence may be substituted by, e.g., the yeast invertase leader, α factor leader (including *Saccharomyces* and *Kluyveromyces* α -factor leaders), or acid phosphatase leader, the *C. albicans* glucoamylase leader, or the signal described in WO 90/13646. In mammalian cell expression, mammalian signal sequences as well as viral secretory leaders, for example, the herpes simplex gD signal, are available.

The DNA for such precursor region is ligated in reading frame to DNA encoding the polypeptide variant.

(li) Origin of replication component

Both expression and cloning vectors contain a nucleic acid sequence that enables the vector to replicate in one or more selected host cells. Generally, in cloning vectors this sequence is one that enables the vector to replicate independently of the host chromosomal DNA, and includes origins of replication or autonomously replicating sequences. Such sequences are well known for a variety of bacteria, yeast, and viruses. The origin of replication from the plasmid pBR322 is suitable for most Gram-negative bacteria, the 2µ plasmid origin is suitable for yeast, and various viral origins (SV40, polyoma, adenovirus, VSV or BPV) are useful for cloning vectors in mammalian cells. Generally, the origin of replication component is not needed for mammalian expression vectors (the SV40 origin may typically be used only because it contains the early promoter).

(iii) Selection gene component

Expression and cloning vectors may contain a selection gene, also termed a selectable marker. Typical selection genes encode proteins that (a) confer resistance to antibiotics or other toxins, e.g., ampicillin, neomycin, methotrexate, or tetracycline, (b) complement auxotrophic

deficiencies, or (c) supply critical nutrients not available from complex media, e.g., the gene encoding D-alanine racemase for **Bacilli**.

One example of a selection scheme utilizes a drug to arrest growth of a host cell. Those cells that are successfully transformed with a heterologous gene produce a protein conferring drug resistance and thus survive the selection regimen. Examples of such dominant selection use the drugs neomycin, mycophenolic acid and hygromycin.

Another example of suitable selectable markers for mammalian cells are those that enable the identification of cells competent to take up the polypeptide variant nucleic acid, such as DHFR, thymidine kinase, metallothionein-I and -II, preferably primate metallothionein genes, adenosine deaminase, omithine decarboxylase, etc.

For example, cells transformed with the DHFR selection gene are first identified by culturing all of the transformants in a culture medium that contains methotrexate (Mtx), a competitive antagonist of DHFR. An appropriate host cell when wild-type DHFR is employed is the Chinese hamster ovary (CHO) cell line deficient in DHFR activity.

Alternatively, host cells (particularly wild-type hosts that contain endogenous DHFR) transformed or co-transformed with DNA sequences encoding polypeptide variant, wild-type DHFR protein, and another selectable marker such as aminoglycoside 3'-phosphotransferase (APH) can be selected by cell growth in medium containing a selection agent for the selectable marker such as an aminoglycosidic antibiotic, e.g., kanamycin, neomycin, or G418. See U.S. Patent No. 4,965,199.

A suitable selection gene for use in yeast is the *trp*1 gene present in the yeast plasmid YRp7 (Stinchcomb *et al.*, *Nature*, 282:39 (1979)). The *trp*1 gene provides a selection marker for a mutant strain of yeast lacking the ability to grow in tryptophan, for example, ATCC No. 44076 or PEP4-1. Jones, *Genetics*, 85:12 (1977). The presence of the *trp*1 lesion in the yeast host cell genome then provides an effective environment for detecting transformation by growth in the absence of tryptophan. Similarly, *Leu2*-deficient yeast strains (ATCC 20,622 or 38,626) are complemented by known plasmids bearing the *Leu2* gene.

In addition, vectors derived from the 1.6 µm circular plasmid pKD1 can be used for transformation of *Kluyveromyces* yeasts. Alternatively, an expression system for large-scale production of recombinant calf chymosin was reported for *K. lactis*. Van den Berg, *Bio/Technology*, 8:135 (1990). Stable multi-copy expression vectors for secretion of mature recombinant human serum albumin by industrial strains of *Kluyveromyces* have also been disclosed. Fleer *et al.*, *Bio/Technology*, 9:968-975 (1991).

5

(iv) Promoter component

10

15

20

25

15

20

25

30

35

30

35

40

45

50

Expression and cloning vectors usually contain a promoter that is recognized by the host organism and is operably linked to the polypeptide variant nucleic acid. Promoters suitable for use with prokaryotic hosts include the phoA promoter, β-lactamase and lactose promoter systems, alkaline phosphatase, a tryptophan (trp) promoter system, and hybrid promoters such as the tac promoter. However, other known bacterial promoters are suitable. Promoters for use in bacterial systems also will contain a Shine-Dalgamo (S.D.) sequence operably linked to the DNA encoding the polypeptide variant. Promoter sequences are known for eukaryotes. Virtually all eukaryotic genes have an AT-

rich region located approximately 25 to 30 bases upstream from the site where transcription is initiated. Another sequence found 70 to 80 bases upstream from the start of transcription of many genes is a CNCAAT region where N may be any nucleotide. At the 3' end of most eukaryotic genes is an AATAAA sequence that may be the signal for addition of the poly A tail to the 3' end of the coding sequence. All of these sequences are suitably inserted into eukaryotic expression vectors.

Examples of suitable promoting sequences for use with yeast hosts include the promoters for 3-phosphoglycerate kinase or other glycolytic enzymes, such as enclase, glyceraldehyde-3phosphate dehydrogenase, hexokinase, pyruvate decarboxylase, phosphofructokinase, glucose-6-phosphate isomerase, 3-phosphoglycerate mutase, pyruvate kinase, triosephosphate isomerase, phosphoglucose isomerase, and glucokinase.

Other yeast promoters, which are inducible promoters having the additional advantage of transcription controlled by growth conditions, are the promoter regions for alcohol dehydrogenase 2, isocytochrome C, acid phosphatase, degradative enzymes associated with nitrogen metabolism, metallothionein, glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase, and enzymes responsible for maltose and galactose utilization. Suitable vectors and promoters for use in yeast expression are further described in EP 73,657. Yeast enhancers also are advantageously used with yeast promoters.

Polypeptide variant transcription from vectors in mammalian host cells is controlled, for example, by promoters obtained from the genomes of viruses such as polyoma virus, fowlpox virus, adenovirus (such as Adenovirus 2), bovine papilloma virus, avian sarcoma virus, cytomegalovirus, a retrovirus, hepatitis-B virus and most preferably Simian Virus 40 (SV40), from heterologous mammalian promoters, e.g., the actin promoter or an immunoglobulin promoter, from heat-shock promoters, provided such promoters are compatible with the host cell systems.

The early and late promoters of the SV40 virus are conveniently obtained as an SV40 restriction fragment that also contains the SV40 viral origin of replication. The immediate early

promoter of the human cytomegalovirus is conveniently obtained as a HindIII E restriction fragment. A system for expressing DNA in mammalian hosts using the bovine papilloma virus as a vector is disclosed in U.S. Patent No. 4,419,446. A modification of this system is described in U.S. Patent No. 4,601,978. See also Reyes et al., Nature 297:598-601 (1982) on expression of human β -interferon cDNA in mouse cells under the control of a thymidine kinase promoter from herpes simplex virus. Alternatively, the rous sarcoma virus long terminal repeat can be used as the promoter.

(v) Enhancer element component

Transcription of a DNA encoding the polypeptide variant of this invention by higher eukaryotes is often increased by inserting an enhancer sequence into the vector. Many enhancer sequences are now known from mammallan genes (globin, elastase, albumin, α-fetoprotein, and insulin). Typically, however, one will use an enhancer from a eukaryotic cell virus. Examples include the SV40 enhancer on the late side of the replication origin (bp 100-270), the cytomegalovirus early promoter enhancer, the polyoma enhancer on the late side of the replication origin, and adenovirus enhancers. See also Yaniv, *Nature* 297:17-18 (1982) on enhancing elements for activation of eukaryotic promoters. The enhancer may be spliced into the vector at a position 5' or 3' to the polypeptide variant-encoding sequence, but is preferably located at a site 5' from the promoter.

(vI) Transcription termination component

Expression vectors used in eukaryotic host cells (yeast, fungi, insect, plant, animal, human, or nucleated cells from other multicellular organisms) will also contain sequences necessary for the termination of transcription and for stabilizing the mRNA. Such sequences are commonly available from the 5' and, occasionally 3', untranslated regions of eukaryotic or viral DNAs or cDNAs. These regions contain nucleotide segments transcribed as polyadenylated fragments in the untranslated portion of the mRNA encoding the polypeptide variant. One useful transcription termination component is the bovine growth hormone polyadenylation region. See WO94/11026 and the expression vector disclosed therein.

(vii) Selection and transformation of host cells

Suitable host cells for cloning or expressing the DNA In the vectors herein are the prokaryote, yeast, or higher eukaryote cells described above. Suitable prokaryotes for this purpose include eubacteria, such as Gram-negative or Gram-positive organisms, for example, Enterobacteriaceae such as Escherichia, e.g., E. coli, Enterobacter, Erwinia, Klebsiella, Proteus, Salmonella, e.g., Salmonella typhimurlum, Serratia, e.g., Serratia marcescans, and Shigella, as well as Bacilli such as B. subtilis and B. licheniformis (e.g., B. licheniformis 41P disclosed in DD 266,710 published 12 April 1989), Pseudomonas such as P. aeruginosa, and

5

Streptomyces. One preferred E. coll cloning host is E. coll 294 (ATCC 31,446), although other strains such as E. coli B, E. coli X1776 (ATCC 31,537), and E. coli W3110 (ATCC 27,325) are suitable. These examples are illustrative rather than limiting.

10

15

In addition to prokaryotes, eukaryotic microbes such as filamentous fungi or yeast are suitable cloning or expression hosts for polypeptide variant-encoding vectors. Saccharomyces cerevisiae, or common baker's yeast, is the most commonly used among lower eukaryotic host microorganisms. However, a number of other genera, species, and strains are commonly available and useful herein, such as Schizosaccharomyces pombe; Kluyveromyces hosts such as, e.g., K. lactis, K. fragilis (ATCC 12,424), K. bulgaricus (ATCC 16,045), K. wickeramil (ATCC 24,178), K. waltii (ATCC 56,500), K. drosophilarum (ATCC 36,906), K. thermotolerans, and K. marxianus; yarrowia (EP 402,226); Pichia pastoris (EP 183,070); Candida; Trichoderma reesia (EP 244,234); Neurospora crassa; Schwanniomyces such as Schwanniomyces occidentalis; and filamentous fungi such as, e.g., Neurospora, Peniclillium, Tolypocladium, and Aspergillus hosts such as A. nidulans and A. niger.

20

25

15

20

25

30

10

30

35

40

45

50

Sultable host cells for the expression of glycosylated polypeptide variant are derived from multicellular organisms. Examples of invertebrate cells include plant and insect cells. Numerous baculoviral strains and variants and corresponding permissive insect host cells from hosts such as Spodoptera frugiperda (caterpillar), Aedes aegypti (mosquito), Aedes albopictus (mosquito), Drosophila melanogaster (fruitfly), and Bombyx mori have been identified. A variety of viral strains for transfection are publicly available, e.g., the L-1 variant of Autographa californica NPV and the Bm-5 strain of Bombyx mori NPV, and such viruses may be used as the virus herein according to the present invention, particularly for transfection of Spodoptera frugiperda cells.

Plant cell cultures of cotton, com, potato, soybean, petunia, tomato, and tobacco can also be utilized as hosts.

However, interest has been greatest in vertebrate cells, and propagation of vertebrate cells in culture (tissue culture) has become a routine procedure. Examples of useful mammalian host cell lines are monkey kidney CV1 line transformed by SV40 (COS-7, ATCC CRL 1651); human embryonic kidney line (293 or 293 cells subcloned for growth in suspension culture, Graham et al., J. Gen Virol. 36:59 (1977)); baby hamster kidney cells (BHK, ATCC CCL 10); Chinese hamster ovary cells/-DHFR (CHO, Urlaub et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 77:4216 (1980)); mouse sertoli cells (TM4, Mather, Biol. Reprod. 23:243-251 (1980)); monkey kidney cells (CV1 ATCC CCL 70); African green monkey kidney cells (VERO-76, ATCC CRL-1587); human cervical carcinoma cells (HELA, ATCC CCL 2); canine kidney cells (MDCK, ATCC CCL 34); buffalo rat liver cells (BRL 3A, ATCC CRL 1442); human lung cells (W138, ATCC CCL 75); human

5

liver cells (Hep G2, HB 8065); mouse mammary tumor (MMT 060562, ATCC CCL51); TRI cells (Mather et al., Annals N.Y. Acad. Sci. 383:44-68 (1982)); MRC 5 cells; FS4 cells; and a human hepatoma line (Hep G2).

10

Host cells are transformed with the above-described expression or cloning vectors for polypeptide variant production and cultured in conventional nutrient media modified as appropriate for inducing promoters, selecting transformants, or amplifying the genes encoding the desired sequences.

The host cells used to produce the polypeptide variant of this invention may be cultured in a variety of media. Commercially available media such as Ham's F10 (Sigma), Minimal

15

(vili) Culturing the host cells

20

Essential Medium ((MEM), (Sigma), RPMI-1640 (Sigma), and Dulbecco's Modified Eagle's Medium ((DMEM), Sigma) are suitable for culturing the host cells. In addition, any of the media described in Ham et al., Meth. Enz. 58:44 (1979), Barnes et al., Anal. Blochem.102:255 (1980),

25

30

35

U.S. Pat. Nos. 4,767,704; 4,657,866; 4,927,762; 4,560,655; or 5,122,469; WO 90/03430; WO 87/00195; or U.S. Patent Re. 30,985 may be used as culture media for the host cells. Any of these media may be supplemented as necessary with hormones and/or other growth factors

1 20 (

(such as insulin, transferrin, or epidermal growth factor), salts (such as sodium chloride, calcium, magnesium, and phosphate), buffers (such as HEPES), nucleotides (such as adenosine and thymidine), antiblotics (such as GENTAMYCIN™ drug), trace elements (defined as inorganic compounds usually present at final concentrations in the micromolar range), and glucose or an

equivalent energy source. Any other necessary supplements may also be included at appropriate concentrations that would be known to those skilled in the art. The culture conditions, such as temperature, pH, and the like, are those previously used with the host cell selected for expression,

30

and will be apparent to the ordinarily skilled artisan.

25 (ix) Polypeptide variant purification

40

intracellularly, in the periplasmic space, or directly secreted into the medium. If the polypeptide variant is produced intracellularly, as a first step, the particulate debris, either host cells or lysed fragments, is removed, for example, by centrifugation or ultrafiltration. Carter et al., Bio/Technology 10:163-167 (1992) describe a procedure for isolating antibodies which are secreted to the periplasmic space of E. coli. Briefly, cell paste is thawed in the presence of sodium acetate (pH 3.5), EDTA, and phenylmethylsulfonylfluoride (PMSF) over about 30 min. Cell debris can be removed by centrifugation. Where the polypeptide variant is secreted into the

When using recombinant techniques, the polypeptide variant can be produced

45

medium, supernatants from such expression systems are generally first concentrated using a

50

commercially available protein concentration filter, for example, an Amicon or Millipore Pellicon

5

ultrafiltration unit. A protease inhibitor such as PMSF may be included in any of the foregoing steps to inhibit proteolysis and antibiotics may be included to prevent the growth of adventitious contaminants.

10

15

20

The polypeptide variant composition prepared from the cells can be purified using, for example, hydroxylapatite chromatography, gel electrophoresis, dialysis, and affinity chromatography, with affinity chromatography being the preferred purification technique. The suitability of protein A as an affinity ligand depends on the species and isotype of any immunoglobulin Fc region that is present in the polypeptide variant. Protein A can be used to purify polypeptide variants that are based on human $\gamma 1$, $\gamma 2$, or $\gamma 4$ heavy chains (Lindmark et al., J. Immunol. Meth. 62:1-13 (1983)). Protein G is recommended for all mouse isotypes and for human y3 (Guss et al., EMBO J. 5:15671575 (1986)). The matrix to which the affinity ligand is attached is most often agarose, but other matrices are available. Mechanically stable matrices such as controlled pore glass or poly(styrenedivinyl)benzene allow for faster flow rates and shorter processing times than can be achieved with agarose. Where the polypeptide variant comprises a C_H3 domain, the Bakerbond ABX™ resin (J. T. Baker, Phillipsburg, NJ) is useful for purification. Other techniques for protein purification such as fractionation on an ion-exchange column, ethanol precipitation, Reverse Phase HPLC, chromatography on silica, chromatography on heparin SEPHAROSE™ chromatography on an anion or cation exchange resin (such as a polyaspartic acid column), chromatofocusing, SDS-PAGE, and ammonium sulfate precipitation

25

20

25

30

35

10

15

35

30

40

45

50

Following any preliminary purification step(s), the mixture comprising the polypeptide variant of interest and contaminants may be subjected to low pH hydrophobic interaction chromatography using an elution buffer at a pH between about 2.5-4.5, preferably performed at low salt concentrations (e.g., from about 0-0.25M salt).

are also available depending on the polypeptide variant to be recovered.

E. Pharmaceutical Formulations

Therapeutic formulations of the polypeptide variant are prepared for storage by mixing the polypeptide variant having the desired degree of purity with optional physiologically acceptable carriers, excipients or stabilizers (*Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences* 16th edition, Osol, A. Ed. (1980)), in the form of lyophilized formulations or aqueous solutions. Acceptable carriers, excipients, or stabilizers are nontoxic to recipients at the dosages and concentrations employed, and include buffers such as phosphate, citrate, and other organic acids; antioxidants including ascorbic acid and methionine; preservatives (such as octadecyldimethylbenzyl ammonium chloride; hexamethonium chloride; benzalkonium chloride, benzethonium chloride; phenol, butyl or benzyl alcohol; alkyl parabens such as methyl or propyl paraben; catechol; resorcinol; cyclohexanol; 3-pentanol; and m-cresol); low molecular weight (less than about 10 residues)

5

10

polypeptide; proteins, such as serum albumin, gelatin, or immunoglobulins; hydrophilic polymers such as polyvinylpyrrolidone; amino acids such as glycine, glutamine, asparagine, histidine, arginine, or lysine; monosaccharides, disaccharides, and other carbohydrates including glucose, mannose, or dextrins; chelating agents such as EDTA; sugars such as sucrose, mannitol, trehalose or sorbitol; salt-forming counter-lons such as sodium; metal complexes (e.g., Zn-protein complexes); and/or non-ionic surfactants such as TWEEN™, PLURONICS™ or polyethylene glycol (PEG).

15

10

15

20

30

The formulation herein may also contain more than one active compound as necessary for the particular indication being treated, preferably those with complementary activities that do not adversely affect each other. Such molecules are suitably present in combination in amounts that are effective for the purpose intended.

20

The active ingredients may also be entrapped in microcapsule prepared, for example, by coacervation techniques or by interfacial polymerization, for example, hydroxymethylcellulose or gelatin-microcapsule and poly-(methylmethacylate) microcapsule, respectively, in colloidal drug delivery systems (for example, liposomes, albumin microspheres, microemulsions, nano-particles and nanocapsules) or in macroemulsions. Such techniques are disclosed in *Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences* 16th edition, Osol, A. Ed. (1980).

25

The formulations to be used for *In vivo* administration must be sterile. This is readily accomplished by filtration through sterile filtration membranes.

30

35

40

Sustained-release preparations may be prepared. Suitable examples of sustainedrelease preparations include semipermeable matrices of solid hydrophobic polymers containing the polypeptide variant, which matrices are in the form of shaped articles, e.g., films, or microcapsule. Examples of sustained-release matrices include polyesters, hydrogels (for example, poly(2-hydroxyethyl-methacrylate), or poly(vinylalcohol)), polylactides (U.S. Pat. No. 3,773,919), copolymers of L-glutamic acid and y ethyl-L-glutamate, non-degradable ethylene-vinyl acetate, degradable lactic acid-glycolic acid copolymers such as the LUPRON DEPOT™ (injectable microspheres composed of lactic acid-glycolic acid copolymer and leuprolide acetate). and poly-D-(-)-3-hydroxybutyric acid. While polymers such as ethylene-vinyl acetate and lactic acid-glycolic acid enable release of molecules for over 100 days, certain hydrogels release proteins for shorter time periods. When encapsulated antibodies remain in the body for a long time, they may denature or aggregate as a result of exposure to moisture at 37°C, resulting in a loss of biological activity and possible changes in immunogenicity. Rational strategies can be devised for stabilization depending on the mechanism involved. For example, if the aggregation mechanism is discovered to be intermolecular S-S bond formation through thio-disulfide interchange, stabilization may be achieved by modifying sulfhydryl residues, lyophilizing from

45

acidic solutions, controlling moisture content, using appropriate additives, and developing specific polymer matrix compositions.

F. Non-Therapeutic Uses for the Polypeptide Variant

The polypeptide variant of the invention may be used as an affinity purification agent. In this process, the polypeptide variant is immobilized on a solid phase such a Sephadex resin or filter paper, using methods well known in the art. The immobilized polypeptide variant is contacted with a sample containing the antigen to be purified, and thereafter the support is washed with a suitable solvent that will remove substantially all the material in the sample except the antigen to be purified, which is bound to the immobilized polypeptide variant. Finally, the support is washed with another suitable solvent, such as glycine buffer, pH 5.0, that will release the antigen from the polypeptide variant.

The polypeptide variant may also be useful in diagnostic assays, e.g., for detecting expression of an antigen of interest in specific cells, tissues, or serum.

For diagnostic applications, the polypeptide variant typically will be labeled with a detectable moiety. Numerous labels are available which can be generally grouped into the following categories:

(a) Radioisotopes, such as ³⁵S, ¹⁴C, ¹²⁵I, ³H, and ¹³¹I. The polypeptide variant can be labeled with the radioisotope using the techniques described in *Current Protocols In Immunology*, Volumes 1 and 2, Coligen *et al.*, Ed. Wiley-Interscience, New York, New York, Pubs. (1991) for example and radioactivity can be measured using scintillation counting.

(b) Fluorescent labels such as rare earth chelates (europium chelates) or fluorescein and its derivatives, rhodamine and its derivatives, dansyl, Lissamine, phycoerythrin and Texas Red are available. The fluorescent labels can be conjugated to the polypeptide variant using the techniques disclosed in *Current Protocols in Immunology*, supra, for example. Fluorescence can be quantified using a fluorimeter.

(c) Various enzyme-substrate labels are available and U.S. Patent No. 4,275,149 provides a review of some of these. The enzyme generally catalyzes a chemical alteration of the chromogenic substrate that can be measured using various techniques. For example, the enzyme may catalyze a color change in a substrate, which can be measured spectrophotometrically. Alternatively, the enzyme may alter the fluorescence or chemiluminescence of the substrate. Techniques for quantifying a change in fluorescence are described above. The chemiluminescent substrate becomes electronically excited by a chemical reaction and may then emit light which can be measured (using a chemiluminometer, for example) or donates energy to a fluorescent acceptor. Examples of enzymatic labels include luciferases (e.g., firefly luciferase and bacterial luciferase; U.S. Patent No. 4,737,456), luciferin, 2,3-dihydrophthalazinediones, malate

5

10

dehydrogenase, urease, peroxidase such as horseradish peroxidase (HRPO), alkaline phosphatase, β-galactosidase, glucoamylase, lysozyme, saccharide oxidases (e.g., glucose oxidase, galactose oxidase, and glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase), heterocyclic oxidases (such as uricase and xanthine oxidase), lactoperoxidase, microperoxidase, and the like. Techniques for conjugating enzymes to antibodies are described in O'Sullivan et al., Methods for the Preparation of Enzyme-Antibody Conjugates for use in Enzyme Immunoassay, in *Methods in Enzym*. (ed J. Langone & H. Van Vunakis), Academic press, New York, 73:147-166 (1981).

15

Examples of enzyme-substrate combinations include, for example:

10

15

20

25

30

(i) Horseradish peroxidase (HRPO) with hydrogen peroxidase as a substrate, wherein the hydrogen peroxidase oxidizes a dye precursor (e.g.,orthophenylene diamine (OPD) or 3,3',5,5'-tetramethyl benzidine hydrochloride (TMB));

20

(ii) alkaline phosphatase (AP) with para-Nitrophenyl phosphate as chromogenic substrate; and

β-D-galactosidase (β-D-Gal) with a chromogenic substrate (e.g., p-nitrophenyl-β-D-galactosidase) or fluorogenic substrate 4-methylumbelliferyl-β-D-galactosidase.

25

Numerous other enzyme-substrate combinations are available to those skilled in the art. For a general review of these, see U.S. Patent Nos. 4,275,149 and 4,318,980.

30

For a general review of these, see U.S. Patent Nos. 4,275,149 and 4,318,980.

Sometimes, the label is indirectly conjugated with the polypeptide variant. The skilled

35

artisan will be aware of various techniques for achieving this. For example, the polypeptide variant can be conjugated with biotin and any of the three broad categories of labels mentioned above can be conjugated with avidin, or *vice versa*. Biotin binds selectively to avidin and thus, the label can be conjugated with the polypeptide variant in this indirect manner. Alternatively, to achieve indirect conjugation of the label with the polypeptide variant, the polypeptide variant is conjugated with a small hapten (e.g., digoxin) and one of the different types of labels mentioned above is conjugated with an anti-hapten polypeptide variant (e.g., anti-digoxin antibody). Thus, indirect conjugation of the label with the polypeptide variant can be achieved.

40

In another embodiment of the invention, the polypeptide variant need not be labeled, and the presence thereof can be detected using a labeled antibody which binds to the polypeptide variant.

45

The polypeptide variant of the present invention may be employed in any known assay method, such as competitive binding assays, direct and indirect sandwich assays, and immunoprecipitation assays. Zola, *Monoclonal Antibodies: A Manual of Techniques*, pp.147-158 (CRC Press, Inc. 1987).

The polypeptide variant may also be used for *in vivo* diagnostic assays. Generally, the polypeptide variant is labeled with a radionuclide (such as ¹¹¹In, ⁹⁹Tc, ¹⁴C, ¹³¹I, ¹²⁵I, ³H, ³²P or ³⁵S) so that the antigen or cells expressing it can be localized using immunoscintiography.

G. In Vivo Uses for the Polypeptide Variant

It is contemplated that the polypeptide variant of the present invention may be used to treat a mammal e.g. a patient suffering from, or predisposed to, a disease or disorder who could benefit from administration of the polypeptide variant. The conditions which can be treated with the polypeptide variant are many and include cancer (e.g. where the polypeptide variant binds the HER2 receptor, CD20 or vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF)); allergic conditions such as asthma (with an anti-IgE antibody); and LFA-1-mediated disorders (e.g. where the polypeptide variant is an anti-LFA-1 or anti-ICAM-1 antibody) etc.

Where the antibody binds the HER2 receptor, the disorder preferably is HER2-expressing cancer, e.g. a benign or malignant tumor characterized by overexpression of the HER2 receptor. Such cancers include, but are not limited to, breast cancer, squamous cell cancer, small-cell lung cancer, non-small cell lung cancer, gastrointestinal cancer, pancreatic cancer, glioblastoma, cervical cancer, ovarian cancer, bladder cancer, hepatoma, colon cancer, colorectal cancer, endometrial carcinoma, salivary gland carcinoma, kidney cancer, liver cancer, prostate cancer, vulval cancer, thyroid cancer, hepatic carcinoma and various types of head and neck cancer.

According to the teachings herein, one may prepare a polypeptide with a variant Fc region which has improved, or diminished, ADCC activity. Such molecules will find applications in the treatment of different disorders.

For example, the polypeptide variant with improved ADCC activity may be employed in the treatment of diseases or disorders where destruction or elimination of tissue or foreign microorganisms is desired. For example, the polypeptide may be used to treat cancer; inflammatory disorders; infections (e.g. bacterial, viral, fungal or yeast infections); and other conditions (such as goiter) where removal of tissue is desired, etc.

Where the polypeptide variant has diminished ADCC activity, such variants may be used to treat diseases or disorders where a Fc region-containing polypeptide with long half-life is desired, but the polypeptide preferably does not have undesirable effector function(s). For example, the Fc region-containing polypeptide may be an anti-tissue factor (TF) antibody; anti-lgE antibody; and anti-integrin antibody (e.g. an anti-α4β7 antibody). The desired mechanism of action of such Fc region-containing polypeptides may be to block ligand-receptor binding pairs. Moreover, the Fc-region containing polypeptide with diminished ADCC activity may be an agonist antibody.

The polypeptide variant is administered by any suitable means, including parenteral, subcutaneous, intraperitoneal, intrapulmonary, and intranasal, and, if desired for local immunosuppressive treatment, intralesional administration. Parenteral infusions include intramuscular, intravenous, intraarterial, intraperitoneal, or subcutaneous administration. In addition, the polypeptide variant is suitably administered by pulse infusion, particularly with declining doses of the polypeptide variant. Preferably the dosing is given by injections, most preferably intravenous or subcutaneous injections, depending in part on whether the administration is brief or chronic.

For the prevention or treatment of disease, the appropriate dosage of polypeptide variant will depend on the type of disease to be treated, the severity and course of the disease, whether the polypeptide variant is administered for preventive or therapeutic purposes, previous therapy, the patient's clinical history and response to the polypeptide variant, and the discretion of the attending physician. The polypeptide variant is suitably administered to the patient at one time or over a series of treatments.

Depending on the type and severity of the disease, about 1 μ g/kg to 15 mg/kg (e.g., 0.1-20mg/kg) of polypeptide variant is an initial candidate dosage for administration to the patient, whether, for example, by one or more separate administrations, or by continuous infusion. A typical daily dosage might range from about 1 μ g/kg to 100 mg/kg or more, depending on the factors mentioned above. For repeated administrations over several days or longer, depending on the condition, the treatment is sustained until a desired suppression of disease symptoms occurs. However, other dosage regimens may be useful. The progress of this therapy is easily monitored by conventional techniques and assays.

The polypeptide variant composition will be formulated, dosed, and administered in a fashion consistent with good medical practice. Factors for consideration in this context include the particular disorder being treated, the particular mammal being treated, the clinical condition of the individual patient, the cause of the disorder, the site of delivery of the agent, the method of administration, the scheduling of administration, and other factors known to medical practitioners. The "therapeutically effective amount" of the polypeptide variant to be administered will be governed by such considerations, and is the minimum amount necessary to prevent, ameliorate, or treat a disease or disorder. The polypeptide variant need not be, but is optionally formulated with one or more agents currently used to prevent or treat the disorder in question. The effective amount of such other agents depends on the amount of polypeptide variant present in the formulation, the type of disorder or treatment, and other factors discussed above. These are generally used in the same dosages and with administration routes as used hereinbefore or about from 1 to 99% of the heretofore employed dosages.

The invention will be more fully understood by reference to the following examples. They should not, however, be construed as limiting the scope of this invention. All literature and patent citations mentioned herein are expressly incorporated by reference.

EXAMPLE 1

Low Affinity Receptor Binding Assay

This assay determines binding of an IgG Fc region to recombinant FcγRIIA, FcγRIIB and FcγRIIIA α subunits expressed as His6-glutathione S transferase (GST)-tagged fusion proteins. Since the affinity of the Fc region of IgG1 for the FcγRI is in the nanomolar range, the binding of IgG1 Fc variants can be measured by titrating monomeric IgG and measuring bound IgG with a polyclonal anti-IgG in a standard ELISA format (Example 2 below). The affinity of the other members of the FcγR family, *I.e.* FcγRIIA, FcγRIIB and FcγRIIIA for IgG Is however in the micromolar range and binding of monomeric IgG1 for these receptors can not be reliably measured in an ELISA format.

The following assay utilizes Fc variants of recombinant anti-IgE E27 (Figures 4A and 4B) which, when mixed with human IgE at a 1:1 molar ratio, forms a stable hexamer consisting of three anti-IgE molecules and three IgE molecules. A recombinant chimeric form of IgE (chimeric IgE) was engineered and consists of a human IgE Fc region and the Fab of an anti-VEGF antibody (Presta *et al. Cancer Research* 57:4593-4599 (1997)) which binds two VEGF molecules per mole of anti-VEGF. When recombinant human VEGF is added at a 2:1 molar ratio to chimeric IgE:E27 hexamers, the hexamers are linked into larger molecular weight complexes via the chimeric IgE Fab:VEGF interaction. The E27 component of this complex binds to the FcyRIIA, FcyRIIB and FcyRIIIA α subunits with higher avidity to permit detection in an ELISA format.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Receptor Coat. Fcy receptor α subunits were expressed as GST fusions of His6 tagged extracellular domains (ECDs) in 293 cells resulting in an ECD-6His-GST fusion protein (Graham et al. J. Gen. Virol. 36:59-74 (1977) and Gorman et al. DNA Prot. Eng. Tech. 2:3-10 (1990)) and purified by Ni-NTA column chromatography (Qiagen, Australia) and buffer exchanged into phosphate buffered saline (PBS). Concentrations were determined by absorption at 280nm using extinction coefficients derived by amino acid composition analysis. Receptors were coated onto Nunc F96 maxisorb plates (cat no. 439454) at 100ng per well by adding 100 μl of receptor-GST fusion at 1 μg/ml in PBS and incubated for 48 hours at 4°C. Prior to assay, plates are washed 3x with 250 μl of wash buffer (PBS pH 7.4 containing 0.5% TWEEN 20TM) and blocked with 250 μl of assay buffer (50mM Tris buffered saline, 0.05% TWEEN 20TM, 0.5% RIA grade bovine albumin (Sigma A7888), and 2mM EDTA pH 7.4).

5

10

15

20

25

15

30

35

40

45

50

35

Immune Complex Formation: Equal molar amounts (1:1) of E27 and recombinant chimeric IgE which binds two moles recombinant human VEGF per mole of chimeric IgE are added to a 12 x 75mm polypropylene tube in PBS and mixed by rotation for 30 minutes at 25°C. E27 (anti-IgE) /chimeric IgE (IgE) hexamers are formed during this incubation. Recombinant human VEGF (165 form, MW 44,000) is added at a 2:1 molar ratio to the IgE concentration and mixed by rotation an additional 30 minutes at 25°C. VEGF- chimeric IgE binding links E27:chimeric IgE hexamers into larger molecular weight complexes which bind FcγR α subunit ECD coated plates via the Fc region of the E27 antibody.

E27:chimeric IgE:VEGF: (1:1:2 molar ratio) complexes are added to FcγR α subunit coated plates at E27 concentrations of 5 μg and 1 μg total IgG in quadruplicate in assay buffer and incubated for 120 minutes at 25°C on an orbital shaker.

Complex Detection: Plates are washed 5x with wash buffer to remove unbound complexes and IgG binding is detected by adding 100 μl horse radish peroxidase (HRP) conjugated goat anti-human IgG (γ) heavy chain specific (Boehringer Mannheim 1814249) at 1:10,000 in assay buffer and incubated for 90min at 25°C on an orbital shaker. Plates are washed 5x with wash buffer to remove unbound HRP goat anti-human IgG and bound anti-IgG is detected by adding 100 μl of substrate solution (0.4mg/ml o-phenylenedaimine dihydrochloride, Sigma P6912, 6 mM H₂O₂ in PBS) and incubating for 8 min at 25°C. Enzymatic reaction is stopped by the addition of 100 μl 4.5N H₂SO₄ and colorimetric product is measured at 490 nm on a 96 well plate densitometer (Molecular Devices). Binding of E27 variant complexes is expressed as a percent of the wild type E27 containing complex.

EXAMPLE 2

Identification of Unique C1q Binding Sites In a Human IgG Antibody

In the present study, mutations were identified in the CH2 domain of a human IgG1 antibody, "C2B8" (Reff et al., Blood 83:435 (1994)), that ablated binding of the antibody to C1q but did not alter the conformation of the antibody nor affect binding to each of the FcyRs. By alanine scanning mutagenesis, five variants in human IgG1 were identified, D270K, D270V, K322A P329A, and P331, that were non-tytic and had decreased binding to C1q. The data suggested that the core C1q binding sites in human IgG1 is different from that of murine IgG2b. In addition, K322A, P329A and P331A were found to bind normally to the CD20 antigen, and to four Fc receptors, FcyRI, FcyRII, FcyRIII and FcRn.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Construction of C2B8 Variants: The chimeric light and heavy chains of anti-CD20 antibody C2B8 (Reff et al., Blood 83:435 (1994)) subcloned separately into previously described PRK vectors (Gorman et al., DNA Protein Eng. Tech. 2:3 (1990)) were used. By site directed

5

10

mutagenesis (Kunkel et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 82:488 (1987)), alanine scan variants of the Fc region in the heavy chain were constructed. The heavy and light chain plasmids were cotransfected into an adenovirus transformed human embryonic kidney cell line as previously described (Werther et al., J. Immunol. 157:4986 (1996)). The media was changed to serum-free 24 hours after transfection and the secreted antibody was harvested after five days. The antibodies were purified using Protein A-SEPHAROSE CL-4BTM (Pharmacia), buffer exchanged and concentrated to 0.5 ml with PBS using a Centricon-30 (Amicon), and stored at 4°C. The concentration of the antibody was determined using total Ig-binding ELISA.

15

20

10

15

20

C1q Binding ELISA: Costar 96 well plates were coated overnight at 4°C with the indicated concentrations of C2B8 in coating buffer (0.05 M sodium carbonate buffer), pH 9. The plates were then washed 3x with PBS/ 0.05% TWEEN 20™, pH 7.4 and blocked with 200µl of ELISA diluent without thimerosal (0.1M NaPO4 / 0.1M NaCl / 0.1% gelatin / 0.05% TWEEN 20™/ 0.05% ProClin300) for 1hr at room temperature. The plate was washed 3x with wash buffer, an aliquot of 100µl of 2 µg/ml C1q (Quidel, San Diego, CA) was added to each well and incubated for 2 hrs at room temperature. The plate was then washed 6x with wash buffer. 100 µl of a 1;1000 dilution of sheep anti-complement C1q peroxidase conjugated antibody (Biodesign) was added to each well and incubated for 1 hour at room temperature. The plate was again washed 6x with wash buffer and 100 μl of substrate buffer (PBS/0.012% H_2O_2) containing OPD (O-phenylenediamine dihydrochloride (Sigma)) was added to each well. The oxidation reaction, observed by the appearance of a yellow color, was allowed to proceed for 30 minutes and stopped by the addition of 100 μl of 4.5 N H₂SO₄. The absorbance was then read at (492-405) nm using a microplate reader (SPECTRA MAX 250™, Molecular Devices Corp.). The appropriate controls were run in parallel (i.e. the ELISA was performed without C1q for each concentration of C2B8 used and also the ELISA was performed without C2B8). For each variant, C1q binding was measured by

30

25

35

40

45

50

Complement Dependent Cytotoxicity (CDC) Assay. This assay was performed essentially as previously described (Gazzano-Santoro et al., J. Immunol. Methods 202:163 (1996)). Various concentrations of C2B8 (0.08-20 μg/ml) were diluted with RHB buffer (RPMI 1640/20mM HEPES (pH 7.2)/2mM Glutamine/0.1% BSA/100 μg/ml Gentamicin). Human complement (Quidel) was diluted 1:3 in RHB buffer and WIL2-S cells (available from the ATCC, Manassas, VA) which express the CD20 antigen were diluted to a density of 1 x 10⁶ cells /ml with RHB buffer. Mixtures of 150 μl containing equal volumes of C2B8, diluted human complement and WIL2-S cells were added to a flat bottom tissue culture 96 well plate and allowed to incubate for 2 hrs at 37°C and 5% CO₂ to facilitate complement mediated cell lysis. 50 μl of alamar blue

plotting the absorbance (492-405) nm versus concentration of C2B8 in µg/ml using a 4-parameter

curve fitting program (KALEIDAGRAPH™) and comparing EC₅₀ values.

(Accumed International) was then added to each well and incubated overnight at 37°C. The absorbance was measured using a 96-well fluorometer with excitation at 530 nm and emission at 590 nm. As described by Gazzano-Santoro et al., the results are expressed in relative fluorescence units (RFU). The sample concentrations were computed from a C2B8 standard curve and the percent activity as compared to wild type C2B8 is reported for each variant.

CD20 Binding Potency of the C2B8 Variants: The binding of C2B8 and variants to the CD20 antigen were assessed by a method previously described (Reff et al., (1994), supra; reviewed in Gazzano-Santoro et al., (1996), supra). WIL2-S cells were grown for 3-4 days to a cell density of 1 x 10⁶ cells/ml. The cells were washed and spun twice in FACS buffer (PBS/0.1% BSA/0.02% NaN₃) and resuspended to a cell density of 5 x 10⁶ cells/ml. 200 μl of cells (5 x 10⁶ cells/ml) and 20 μl of diluted C2B8 samples were added to a 5 ml tube and incubated at room temperature for 30 minutes with agitation. The mixture was then washed with 2 ml of cold FACS buffer, spun down and resuspended in 200 μl of cold FACS buffer. To the suspension, 10 μl of goat anti-human IgG-FITC (American Qualex Labs.) was added and the mixture was incubated in the dark at room temperature for 30 minutes with agitation. After incubation, the mixture was washed with 2 ml of FACS buffer, spun down and resuspended in 1 ml of cold fixative buffer (1% formaldehyde in PBS). The samples were analyzed by flow cytometry and the results expressed as relative fluorescence units (RFU) were plotted against antibody concentrations using a 4-parameter curve fitting program (KALEIDAGRAPHTM). The EC₆₀ values are reported as a percentage of that of the C2B8 reference material.

Fc/R Binding ELISAs: Fc/RI α subunit-GST fusion was coated onto Nunc F96 maxisorb plates (cat no. 439454) by adding 100 μl of receptor-GST fusion at 1 μg/ml in PBS and incubated for 48 hours at 4°C. Prior to assay, plates are washed 3x with 250 μl of wash buffer (PBS pH 7.4 containing 0.5% TWEEN 20TM) and blocked with 250 μl of assay buffer (50mM Tris buffered saline, 0.05% TWEEN 20TM, 0.5% RIA grade bovine albumin (Sigma A7888), and 2mM EDTA pH 7.4). Samples diluted to 10μg/ml in 1 ml of assay buffer are added to Fc/RI α subunit coated plates and incubated for 120 minutes at 25°C on an orbital shaker. Plates are washed 5x with wash buffer to remove unbound complexes and IgG binding is detected by adding 100 μl horse radish peroxidase (HRP) conjugated goat anti-human IgG (γ) heavy chain specific (Boehringer Mannheim 1814249) at 1:10,000 in assay buffer and incubated for 90min at 25°C on an orbital shaker. Plates are washed 5x with wash buffer to remove unbound HRP goat anti-human IgG and bound anti-IgG is detected by adding 100 μl of substrate solution (0.4mg/ml o-phenylenedaimine dihydrochloride, Sigma P6912, 6 ml H₂O₂ in PBS) and incubating for 8 mln at 25°C. Enzymatic reaction is stopped by the addition of 100 μl 4.5N H₂SO₄ and colorimetric

5

10

product is measured at 490 nm on a 96 well plate densitometer (Molecular Devices). Binding of variant is expressed as a percent of the wild type molecule.

FcyRII and III binding ELISAs were performed as described in Example 1 above.

15

••

5

25

20

30

20

40

35

45

50

For measuring FcRn binding activity of IgG variants, ELISA plates were coated with 2 μg/ml streptavidin (Zymed, South San Francisco) in 50 mM carbonate buffer, pH 9.6, at 4°C overnight and blocked with PBS-0.5% BSA, pH 7.2 at room temperature for one hour. Biotinylated FcRn (prepared using biotin-X-NHS from Research Organics, Cleveland, OH and used at 1-2 μg/ml) in PBS-0.5% BSA, 0.05% polysorbate 20, pH 7.2, was added to the plate and incubated for one hour. Two fold serial dilutions of IgG standard (1.6-100 ng/ml) or variants in PBS-0.5% BSA, 0.05% polysorbate 20, pH 6.0, were added to the plate and incubated for two hours. Bound IgG was detected using peroxidase labeled goat F(ab'), anti-human IgG F(ab'), in the above pH 6.0 buffer (Jackson ImmunoResearch, West Grove, PA) followed by 3,3',5,5'-tetramethyl benzidine (Kirgaard & Perry Laboratories) as the substrate. Plates were washed between steps with PBS-0.05% polysorbate 20 at either pH 7.2 or 6.0. Absorbance was read at 450 nm on a Vmax plate reader (Molecular Devices, Menlo Park, CA). Titration curves were fit with a fourparameter nonlinear regression curve-fitting program (KaleidaGraph, Synergy software, Reading, PA). Concentrations of IgG variants corresponding to the mid-point absorbance of the titration curve of the standard were calculated and then divided by the concentration of the standard corresponding to the mid-point absorbance of the standard titration curve.

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

By alanine scanning mutagenesis, several single point mutations were constructed in the CH2 domain of C2B8 beginning with E318A, K320A and K322A. All the variants constructed bound normally to the CD20 antigen (Table 3).

Table 3

| | wt | E318A | K320A | K322A | P329A | P331A |
|---------|-----|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| FcRn | + | + | + | + | | |
| CD20 | + | + | + | + | + | + |
| FcyRl | + | + | + | + | + | + |
| FcγRII | + | + | + | + | + | + |
| FcyRIII | + | + | + | + | + | + |
| *C1q | +++ | ++ | +++ | - | | |
| CDC | + | + | + | | - | - |

⁽⁺⁾ indicates binding and (-) signifies binding abolishedWith respect to C1q binding, each + sign is equivalent to approximately 33% binding.

5

10

20

15

25

15

20

25

30

30

35

40

45

50

Where binding of human complement to an antibody with a human Fc was analyzed, the ability of E318A and K320A to activate complement was essentially identical to that of wild type C2B8 (Table 3). When compared to wild type C2B8, there appears to be little difference in the binding of E318A and K320A to C1q. There is only a 10% decrease in the binding of K320A and about a 30% decrease in the binding of E318A to C1q (Fig. 2). The results indicate that the effect of the E318A and the K320A substitution on complement activation and C1q binding is minimal. Also, the human IgG1 of C2B8 was substituted for human IgG2 and used as a negative control in the C1q binding studies. The IgG2 variant appears to have a much lower affinity for C1q than the E318A and K320A variants (Fig. 2). Thus, the results demonstrate that E318 and K320 do not constitute the core C1q binding sites for human IgG1. Conversely, the K322A substitution had a significant effect on both complement activity and C1q binding. The K322A variant did not have CDC activity when tested in the above CDC assay and was more than a 100 fold lower than wild type C2B8 in binding to C1q (Fig. 2). In the human system, K322 is the only residue of the proposed core C1q binding sites that appeared to have a significant effect on complement activation and C1q binding.

Since the Duncan and Winter study was performed using mouse IgG2b and the above results reveal that K320 and E318 in human IgG1 are not involved in C1q binding, and without being bound to any one theory, the above data suggest that the C1q binding region in murine IgGs is different from that of the human. To investigate this further and also to identify additional variants that do not bind to C1q and hence do not activate complement, several more point mutations in the vicinity of K322 were constructed as assessed from the three dimensional structure of the C2B8 Fc. Variants constructed, K274A, N276A, Y278A, S324A, P329A, P331A, K334A, and T335A, were assessed for their ability to bind C1q and also to activate complement. Many of these substitutions had little or no effect on C1q binding or complement activation. In the above assays, the P329A and the P331A variants did not activate complement and had decreased binding to C1q. The P331A variant did not activate complement and was 60 fold lower in binding to C1q (Flg. 3) when compared to wild type C2B8 (Fig. 2). The concentration range of the antibody variants used in Fig. 3 is expanded to 100µg/ml in order to observe saturation of C1q binding to the P331A variant. The mutation P329A results in an antibody that does not activate complement and is more than a 100 fold lower in binding to C1q (Fig. 3) when compared to wild type C2B8 (Fig. 2).

Variants that did not bind to C1q and hence did not activate complement were examined for their ability to bind to the Fc receptors: Fc_YRI, Fc_YRIIA, Fc_YRIIB, Fc_YRIIIA and FcRn. This particular study was performed using a humanized anti-IgE antibody, an IgG1 antibody with these mutations (see Example 1 above). The results revealed the variants, K322A and P329A, bind

5

10

15

to all the Fc receptors to the same extent as the wild type protein (Table 4). However, there was a slight decrease in the binding of P331A to FcyRIIB.

wt

E318A

In conclusion, two amino acid substitutions in the COOH terminal region of the CH2 domain of human IgG1, K322A and P329A were identified that result in more than 100 fold decrease in C1q binding and do not activate the CDC pathway. These two variants, K322A and P329A, bind to all Fc receptors with the same affinity as the wild type antibody. Based on the results, summarized in Table 4, and without being bound to any one theory, it is proposed that the C1q binding epicenter of human IgG1 is centered around K322, P329 and P331 and is different from the murine IgG2b epicenter which constitutes E318, K320 and K322.

K320A

10

Table 4

K322A

P329A

P331A

20

25

30

35

40

45

CD20 100 89 102 86 112 103 100 *FcyRI 93 102 90 104 74 *FcyRIIA 100 113 94 109 111 86 100 106 "FcyRIIB 83 101 96 58 *FcyRIII 100 104 72 90 85 73 CDC 100 108 108 none none none *For binding to the FcyRs the variants were made in the E27 background (anti-IgE). The results are presented as a percentage of the wild type.

A further residue involved in binding human C1q was identified using the methods described in the present example. The residue D270 was replaced with lysine and valine to generate variants D270K and D270V, respectively. These variants both showed decreased binding to human C1q (Fig. 6) and were non-lytic (Fig. 7). The two variants bound the CD20 antigen normally and recruited ADCC.

EXAMPLE 3

20

15

Variants with Improved C1q Binding

The following study shows that substitution of residues at positions K326, A327, E333 and K334 resulted in variants with at least about a 30% increase in binding to C1g when compared to the wild type antibody. This indicated K326, A327, E333 and K334 are potential sites for improving the efficacy of antibodies by way of the CDC pathway. The aim of this study was to improve CDC activity of an antibody by increasing binding to C1q. By site directed mutagenesis at K326 and E333, several variants with increased binding to C1q were constructed. The residues in order of increased binding at K326 are K<V<E<A<G<D<M<W, and the residues in order of increased binding at E333 are E<Q<D<V<G<A<S, Four variants, K326M, K326D, K326E

5

and E333S were constructed with at least a two-fold increase in binding to C1q when compared to wild type. Variant K326W displayed about a five-fold increase in binding to C1q.

10

Variants of the wild type C2B8 antibody were prepared as described above in Example 2. A further control antibody, wild type C2B8 produced in Chinese hamster ovary (CHO) cells essentially as described in US Patent 5,736,137, was included in a C1q binding ELISA to confirm that wt C2B8 produced in the 293 kidney cell line had the same C1q binding activity as the CHO-produced antibody (see "CHO-wt-C2B8" in Fig. 8). The C1q binding ELISA, CDC assay, and CD20 binding potency assay in this example were performed as described in Example 2 above.

15

10

As shown in Fig. 8, alanine substitution at K326 and E333 in C2B8 resulted in variants with about a 30% increase in binding to C1q.

20

Several other single point variants at K326 and E333 were constructed and assessed for their ability to bind C1q and activate complement. All the variants constructed bound normally to the CD20 antigen.

25

With respect to K326, the other single point variants constructed were K326A, K326D, K326E, K326G, K326V, K326M and K326W. As shown in Fig. 9, these variants all bound to C1q with a better affinity than the wild type antibody. K326W, K326M, K326D and K326E showed at least a two-fold increase in binding to C1q (Table 5). Among the K326 variants, K326W had the best affinity for C1q.

30

Table 5

35

45

40

| Variant | EC ₅₀ value | | |
|-----------|------------------------|--|--|
| Wild type | 1.53 | | |
| K326V | 1.30 | | |
| K326A | 1.03 | | |
| K326E | 1.08 | | |
| K326G | 0.95 0.76 | | |
| K326D | | | |
| K326M | 0.67 | | |
| K326W | 0.47 | | |
| E333S | 0.81 | | |
| E333A | 0.98 | | |
| E333G | 1.14 | | |
| E333V | 1.18 | | |
| E333D | 1.22 | | |
| E333Q | 1.52 | | |
| K334A | 1.07 | | |

5

10

Substitutions with hydrophobic as well as charged residues resulted in variants with Increased binding to C1q. Even substitution with glycine which is known to impart flexibility to a chain and is well conserved in nature, resulted in a variant with higher affinity for C1q when compared to the wild type. It would appear that any amino acid substitution at this site would result in a variant with higher affinity for C1q. As assessed from the three-dimensional structure, K326 and E333 are in the vicinity of the core C1q binding sites (Fig. 10).

15

In addition to alanine, E333 was also substituted with other amino acid residues. These variants, E333S, E333G, E333V, E333D, and E333Q, all had increased binding to C1q when compared to the wild type (Fig. 11). As shown in Table 5, the order of binding affinity for C1q was as follows: E333S>E333A>E333G>E333V>E333D>E333Q. Substitutions with amino acid residues with small side chain volumes, *i.e.* serine, alanine and glycine, resulted in variants with higher affinity for C1q in comparison to the other variants, E333V, E333D and E333Q, with larger side chain volumes. The variant E333S had the highest affinity for C1q, showing a two-fold increase in binding when compared to the wild type. Without being bound to any one theory, this indicates the effect on C1q binding at 333 may also be due in part to the polarity of the residue.

25

20

Double variants were also generated. As shown in Figs. 12 and 13, double variants K326M-E333S and K326A-E333A were at least three-fold better at binding human C1q than wild type C2B8 (Fig. 12) and at least two-fold better at mediating CDC compared to wild type C2B8 (Fig. 13). Additivity indicates these are independently acting variants.

30

As shown in Fig. 14, a further variant with improved C1q binding (50% increase) was made by changing A327 in a human IgG1 constant region to glycine. Conversely, in a human IgG2 constant region, changing G327 to alanine reduced C1q binding of the IgG2 antibody.

35

40

EXAMPLE 4

25

30

10

Identification of FcR Binding Sites In Human IgG Antibodies

In the present study, the effect of mutating various Fc region residues of an IgG1 antibody with respect to binding Fc_YRI, Fc_YRIIA, Fc_YRIIB and Fc_YRIIIA as well as FcRn was evaluated. Antibody variants with improved as well as diminished FcR binding were identified.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

45

Construction of IgG1 Variants: Recombinant anti-IgE E27 having the light chain and heavy chain sequences in Figs. 4A and 4B, respectively, was used as the parent antibody in the following experiments. This antibody binds the antigen IgE and has a non-A allotype IgG1 Fc region. By site directed mutagenesis (Kunkel et al., Proc. Natl. Acad.Sci.USA 82:488 (1987)), variants of the Fc region in the heavy chain of the above parent antibody were constructed. The heavy and light chain plasmids were co-transfected into an adenovirus transformed human

5

embryonic kidney cell line as previously described (Werther et al., J. Immunol. 157:4986 (1996)). The media was changed to serum-free 24 hours after transfection and the secreted antibody was harvested after five days. The antibodies were purified by Protein G SEPHAROSE® (Pharmacla), buffer exchanged and concentrated to 0.5 ml with PBS using a Centricon-30 (Amicon), and stored at 4°C. Concentration was determined by adsorption at 280 nm using extinction coefficients derived by amino acid composition analysis.

15

10

High Affinity Fc;RIA Binding ELISA: Fc;RIA was expressed as a GST fusion of His6 tagged extracellular domain in 293 cells and purified by Ni-NTA column chromatography.

To purify FcyRIA, supernatant from transfected 293 cells was removed after three days.

20

Protease inhibitors were added; 50 μ L Aprotinin (Sigma)/ 50 mL supernatant, and PMSF (1mM). Supernatants were concentrated to 10 mL in a stirred cell (Amicon), and dialyzed overnight at 4°C against 1 liter column buffer (50 mM Tris pH 8.0, 20mM Imidazole, 300 mM NaCl). Additional dialysis was done the following morning against fresh column buffer for 4 hours at 4°C. The solution was loaded on to a 1mL Ni $^{++}$ column (NTA super flow resin, Qlagen) previously equilibrated with 10 mL column buffer. Columns were washed with 10 mL column buffer, and protein was eluted with 2.5 mL elution buffer (50mM Tris pH 8.0, 250mM Imidazole, 300mM NaCl). Protein was concentrated to 0.5 mL and buffer exchanged into PBS. Concentrations were determined by adsorption at 280 nm using an extinction coefficient derived by amino acid

25

composition analysis.

30

35

approximately 150 ng per well by adding 100 μ L of receptor at 1.5 μ g/mL in PBS and incubated for 24 hours at 4°C. Prior to assay, plates were washed 3x with 250 μ L of wash buffer (phosphate

Purified receptors were coated onto Nunc F96 maxisorb plates (cat no. 439545) at

buffered saline pH 7.4 containing 0.5% TWEEN 20®) and blocked with 250 μ L of assay buffer (50 mM tris buffered saline, 0.05% TWEEN 20®, 0.5% RIA grade bovine albumin (Sigma A7888),

and 2mM EDTA pH 7.4).

40

100 μ L of E27 was added to the first four wells of the Fc γ RIA subunit coated plated at a concentration of 10 μ g/mL. 80 μ L of assay buffer was added to the next four well followed by 20 μ L of the 10 μ g/mL E27 IgG to give a final concentration of 2 μ g/mL. Plates were incubated at 25°C for 2 hours on an orbital shaker.

30

10

20

25

For detection, plates were washed 5x with wash buffer to remove unbound antibody. IgG binding to GST-Fc $_Y$ RIA was detected by adding 100 $_{\mu}L$ horse radish peroxidase (HRP) conjugated protein G (BIORAD) at 1:5000. HRP conjugates were incubated for 1.5 hours at 25°C on an orbital shaker. Plates were washed x5 with wash buffer to remove unbound HRP conjugate. Binding was detected by adding 100 $_{\mu}L$ of substrate solution (0.4mg/mL o-

50

5

phenylenedaimine dihydrochloride, Sigma P6912, 6 mM H2O2 in PBS) and incubating for 10 minutes at 25°C. Enzymatic reaction was stopped by the addition of 100 µL of 4.5 N H₂SO₄ and colorimetric product was measured at 490 nm on a 96 well plate densitometer (Molecular Devices).

10

Binding of E27 variants at IgG concentration of 2 µg/mL was expressed as a ratio of wild type E27.

15

Fc /RIA THP-1 Assay. 100 µL of E27 was added to the first three wells of a serocluster plate (Costar) at a concentration of 20 µg/mL in assay buffer (1x PBS, 0.1% BSA, 0.01% NaN₃). 92.5 μL of assay buffer was added to the next three wells followed by 7.5 μL of the 20 $\mu g/mL$ E27 lgG to give a final concentration of 1.5 μg/mL. To each well, 100 μL of THP-1 cells were added at a concentration of 5 million cells/mL in FACS assay buffer. The plate is incubated on ice for 30 minutes

20

5

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

For detection, cells were washed 2x with assay buffer to remove unbound antibody. IgG binding FcyRIA was detected by adding 100 µL FITC conjugated F(ab'), fragment of goat antihuman IgG heavy chain specific. (Jackson Immunoresearch) at 1:200. FITC conjugates were incubated with cells for 30 minutes on ice. Cells were washed x3 with assay buffer to remove unbound FITC conjugate. Cells were stained with P.I. (SIGMA) at 2.5 µg/mL and analyzed by flow cytometry.

Binding of E27 variants at IgG concentration of 1.5 μ g/mL was expressed as a ratio of wild type E27.

Data from the plate assay (FcyRIA ELISA) and cell-based assay (FcyRIA THP-1 assay) was averaged to arrive at an FcyRIA-binding activity.

Low Affinity Fc; R Binding ELISAs: Fc; RIIA, Fc; RIIB and Fc; RIIIA binding ELISAs were performed as described in Example 1 above, with detection of the stable hexamer (consisting of three anti-IgE molecules and three IgE molecules).

FcRn Binding ELISA: For measuring FcRn binding activity of IgG variants, ELISA plates were coated with 2 μg/ml streptavidin (Zymed, South San Francisco) in 50 mM carbonate buffer, pH 9.6, at 4°C overnight and blocked with PBS-0.5% BSA, pH 7.2 at room temperature for one hour. Biotinylated FcRn (prepared using biotin-X-NHS from Research Organics, Cleveland, OH and used at 1-2 µg/ml) in PBS-0.5% BSA, 0.05% polysorbate 20, pH 7.2, was added to the plate and incubated for one hour. Two fold serial dilutions of IgG standard (1.6-100 ng/ml) or variants in PBS-0.5% BSA, 0.05% polysorbate 20, pH 6.0, were added to the plate and incubated for two hours. Bound IgG was detected using peroxidase labeled goat F(ab')2 anti-human IgG F(ab')2 in the above pH 6.0 buffer (Jackson ImmunoResearch, West Grove, PA) followed by 3,3',5,5'tetramethyl benzidine (Kirgaard & Perry Laboratories) as the substrate. Plates were washed

5

10

between steps with PBS-0.05% TWEEN 20® at either pH 7.2 or 6.0. Absorbance was read at 450 nm on a Vmax plate reader (Molecular Devices, Menlo Park, CA). Titration curves were fit with a four-parameter nonlinear regression curve-fitting program (KaleidaGraph, Synergy software, Reading, PA). Concentrations of IgG variants corresponding to the mid-point absorbance of the titration curve of the standard were calculated and then divided by the concentration of the standard corresponding to the mid-point absorbance of the standard titration curve.

15

In Vitro ADCC Assay: To prepare chromium 51-labeled target cells, tumor cell lines were grown in tissue culture plates and harvested using sterile 10 mM EDTA in PBS. SK-BR-3 cells, a 3+ HER2-overexpressing human breast cancer cell line, were used as targets in all assays. The detached cells were washed twice with cell culture medium. Cells (5x10⁶) were labeled with 200 µCi of chromium51(New England Nuclear/DuPont) at 37°C for one hour with occasional mixing. Labeled cells were washed three times with cell culture medium, then were resuspended to a concentration of 1x10⁵ cells/mL. Cells were used either without opsonization, or were opsonized prior to the assay by incubation with rhuMAb HER2 wildtype (HERCEPTIN⁶) or seven Fc mutants (G14, G18, G17, G36, G30, G31 and G34) at 100 ng/mL and 1.25 ng/mL in PBMC assay or 20 ng/mL and 1 ng/mL in NK assay.

25

20

Peripheral blood mononuclear cells were prepared by collecting blood on heparin from normal healthy donors and dilution with an equal volume of phosphate buffered saline (PBS). The blood was then layered over LYMPHOCYTE SEPARATION MEDIUM® (LSM: Organon Teknika) and centrifuged according to the manufacturer's instructions. Mononuclear cells were collected from the LSM-plasma interface and were washed three times with PBS. Effector cells were suspended in cell culture medium to a final concentration of 1x10⁷ cells/mL.

30

20

25

After purification through LSM, natural killer (NK) cells were isolated from PBMCs by negative selection using an NK cell isolation kit and a magnetic column (Miltenyi Blotech) according to the manufacturer's instructions. Isolated NK cells were collected, washed and resuspended in cell culture medium to a concentration of 2x10⁸ cells/mL. The identity of the NK

cells was confirmed by flow cytometric analysis.

35

40

Varying effector:target ratios were prepared by serially diluting the effector (either PBMC or NK) cells two-fold along the rows of a microtiter plate (100µL final volume) in cell culture medium. The concentration of effector cells ranged from 1.0x10⁷/mL to 2.0 x 10⁴/mL for PBMC and from 2.0x10⁵/mL to 3.9x10³/mL for NK. After titration of effector cells, 100µL of chromium 51-labeled target cells (opsonized or nonoponsonized) at 1x10⁵ cells/mL were added to each well of the plate. This resulted in an initial effector:target ratio of 100:1 for PBMC and 20:1 for NK cells.

50

45

All assays were run in duplicate, and each plate contained controls for both spontaneous lysis (no

5

10

effector cells) and total lysis (target cells plus 100 µL) 1% sodium dodecyl sulfate, 1 N sodium hydroxide). The plates were incubated at 37°C for 18 hours, after which the cell culture supernatants were harvested using a supernatant collection system (Skatron Instrument, Inc.) and counted in a Minaxi auto-gamma 5000 series gamma counter (Packard) for one minute. Results were then expressed as percent cytotoxicity using the formula:

% Cytotoxicity = (sample cpm-spontaneous lysis)/(total lysis-spontaneous lysis) x 100 Four-parameter curve-fitting was then used to evaluate the data (KaleidaGraph 3.0.5). RESULTS

15

A variety of antibody variants were generated which had FcR binding activity that differed from the parent antibody. The FcR binding data for the variants generated is shown in Tables 6 10 and 7 below. An additional variant, T307Q, also displayed improved FcRn binding compared to E27 parent antibody.

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

-70-

TABLE 6 CH2 DOMAIN VARIANTS

| 162 | IG2 Res#EU (Kabat) | FcRn mean sd n | FcyR mean sd | FcyRI | q | FcyRIIA mean sc | IIA sd | FcyRIIB mean sc | B sd | FcyRIIIA mean sd | 1 |
|---|--------------------------|-------------------|-----------------|------------|-----|--------------------|-----------|--------------------|--------|---------------------|---------|
| 3 | REDUCED BINDING | TO ALL F | | | | | | | | | |
| g | 1 233-236 ELLG > PVA- | 0.54 (0.20) 3 | | .12 (0.06) | ·o | 0.08 (| (0.01) | 0.12 (0 | (0.01) | 0.04 (0.02) | (2) n=2 |
| 1 8 | P238A(251) | 1.49 (0.17) 3 | 0.60 | (0.05) | 5 | 0.38 (| (0.14) | 0.36 (0 | (0.15) | 0.07 (0.05) | 5) n=4 |
| 14 | D265A(278) | 1.23 (0.14) 4 | 0.14 (| (0.04) | ဖ | 0.07 (0.01) | 0.01) | 0.13 (0.05) | .05) | 0.09 (0.06) | 6) n=4 |
| 17 | E269A (282) | 1.05 | 0.52 (| (0.03) | ဖ | 0.65 (| (0.18) | 0.75 (0.29) | .29) | 0.45 (0.13) | 3) n=5 |
| 181 | D270A(283) | 1.05 | 0.76 (| (0.12) | 9 | 0.06 (| (0.01) | 0.11 (0 | (0.05) | 0.14 (0.04) | 4) n=5 |
| i ន្ល 71 | N297A(314) | 0.80 (0.18) 8 | 0.15 (| (0.06) | 7 | 0.05 (| (0.00) | 0.10 (0 | (0.02) | 0.03 (0.01) | 1) n=3 |
| 25 | A327Q (346) | 0.97 | 0.63 (| (0.15) | ٦. | 0.13 (| (0.03) | 0.14 (0 | (0.03) | 0.06 (0.01) | 1) n=4 |
| 6 | P329A (348) | 0.80 | 0.48 (| (0.10) | 9 | 0.08 (| (0.02) | 0.12 (0 | (0.08) | 0.21 (0.03) | |
| E E | i U | TO ECYRII & | FCYRIII | | 1 1 | | | | | | |
| i n | S239A (252) | 1.06 | 0.81 (| (0.0) | | 0.73 (| (0.25) | 0.76 (0 | (0.36) | 0.26 (0.08) | |
| 33 | E294A(311) | 0.75 | 0.90 | (0.08) | 4 | 0.87 (| (0.19) | 0.63 (0 | (0.17) | 0.66 (0.14) | 4) n=5 |
| 94 | Q295A (312) | 0.79 | 1.00 (| (0.11) | 4 | 0.62 (| (0.20) | 0.50 (0 | (0.24) | 0.25 (0.09) | |
| 99 | | 1.26 (0.21) 3 | 0.91 (| (0.11) | 5 | 0.86 (| (0.10) | 0.65 (0 | (0.17) | 0.33 (0.09) | 9) n=8 |
| Σ | IMPROVED BINDING | TO FCYRII & | FCYRIII | | | | | | | | |
| ======================================= | 11 T256A(269) | 1.91 (0.43) 6 | 1.14 | (0.14) | 4 | 1.41 (| (0.27) | 2.06 (0. | (0.66) | 1.32 (0.18) | |
| 8 | K290A(307) | 0.79 (0.14) 3 | 1.01 | (0.08) | 4 | 1.29 (| (0.21) | 1.40 (0.18) | .18) | 1.28 (0.21) | 1) n=7 |

| 10 | |
|----|--|

| 1 | 5 | |
|---|---|--|

| 20 | |
|----|--|

| 2 | £ | |
|----|---|--|
| ٤, | J | |

| _ | | | |
|---|----|---|--|
| 3 | 1/ | | |
| ۰ | • | • | |
| | | | |

| 26 | |
|----|---|
| Ji | , |

| A | ŧ. | r | ١ | |
|---|----|---|---|--|
| ٧ | ١ | Ŀ | , | |

| 15 |
|----|
| |
| 5 |

| _ | |
|---|---|
| - | n |

| | | | | | | | | | | | | | - |
|-----|---------------|---|---------------|-----|------|------------------|-----|------|-------------|------|-------------|-------------|------|
| 44 | D312A(331) | 1.50 | 1.50 (0.06) 4 | į | .01 | 1.01 (0.12) | 3 | 1.20 | 1.20 (0.24) | 1.19 | (0.07) | 1.23 (0.14) | n=3 |
| | K326A (345) | 1.03 | | 1 | 1.04 | (0.05) | 4 | 1.26 | (0.21) | 1.49 | (0.27) | 1.22 (0.28) | n=5 |
| 197 | A330 (349) K | | | | | 1 1 1 1 | | 1.28 | | 1.25 | | 1.28 | n=1 |
| 273 | A339 (359) T | | | 1 | 1.23 | | | 1.11 | | 1.23 | | 1.42 | n=1 |
| 필 | EFFECT FCYRII | 0 11 14 14 15 16 16 16 16 16 16 16 16 16 16 16 16 16 | | | | | | | | | | | 9 |
| 0 | R255A(268) | 0.59 | (0.19) 4 | 1 | 1.26 | (0.26) | | 1.30 | (0.20) | 1.59 | (0.42) | 0.98 (0.18) | n=5 |
| | E258A(271) | 1.18 | | 7 | 1.18 | (0.13) | 4 | 1.33 | (0.22) | 1.65 | (0.38) | 1.12 (0.12) | n=5 |
| 1 | S267A(280) | 1.08 | | 1 | 1.20 | (0.14) | 4 | 1.64 | (0.18) | 2.06 | (0.35) | 1.14 (0.25) | n=7 |
| 16 | H268A(281) | 1.02 | (0.22) | 3 7 | 1.05 | (0.11) | 4 | 1.22 | (0.14) | 1.45 | (0.23) | 0.52 (0.09) | n=12 |
| _ | E272A(285) | 1.34 | (0.24) 4 | - | 1.04 | (0.06) | 4 | 1.24 | (0.11) | 1.58 | (0.19) | 0.74 (0.12) | n=4 |
| | N276A(289) | 1.15 | (0.21) | 3 7 | 1.05 | (0.14) | 4 | 1.29 | (0.20) | 1.34 | (0.40) | 0.95 (0.04) | n=4 |
| ! | D280A(295) | 0.82 | 1 | ٥ | 0.97 | (0.06) | 4 | 1.34 | (0.14) | 1.60 | (0.31) | 1.09 (0.20) | n=10 |
| | E283A(300) | 0.71 | | 0 | 0.97 | (0.03) | 4 | 1.24 | (0.23) | 1.20 | 1.20 (0.17) | 1.01 (0.14) | n=5 |
| ! | H285A (302) | 0.85 | | ٥ | 0.96 | (0.01) | 4 | 1.26 | (0.12) | 1.23 | (0.15) | 0.87 (0.04) | n=4 |
| ! _ | N286A (303) | 1.24 | (0.04) 2 | į | 0.94 | (0.20) | 13 | 1.28 | (0.23) | 1.39 | (0.14) | 1.03 (0.08) | n=5 |
| ! . | R292A (309) | 0.81 | (0.18) 4 | 0 | 0.93 | (0.02) | 4 | 0.27 | 0.27 (0.14) | 0.18 | (0.01) | 0.90 (0.18) | 0=u |
| ! | S298A(317) | 0.80 | | 7 | 1.10 | (0.04) | ε . | 0.40 | (0.08) | 0.21 | (0.11) | 1.30 (0.18) | n=12 |
| 38 | R301A(320) | 0.86 | | 1 | 1.06 | (0.10) | 4 | 1.12 | (0.12) | 1.26 | 1.26 (0.14) | 0.21 (0.08) | 9=u |
| 38B | R301M(320) | 0.88 | | - | 1.06 | (0.12) | 4 | 1.29 | (0.17) | 1.56 | (0.12) | 0.48 (0.21) | n=4 |
| | V305A(324) | 1.46 | (0.48) | 6 1 | 1.04 | (0.19) | 21 | 1.12 | (0.12) | 1.23 | (0.22) | 0.84 (0.15) | n=4 |
| ŀ | T307A(326) | 1.81 | 1.81 (0.32) 6 | | 66 | 0.99 (0.14) | 4 | 1.19 | (0.37) | 1.35 | 1.35 (0.33) | 1.12 (0.18) | n=12 |

| (0) n=3 | 1) n=5 | 7) n=4 | .4) n=5 | 7) n=4 | 9) n=3 | 7) n=10 | 4) n=3 | 8) n=4 | | 5) n=4 | 7) n=5 | 7) n=6 | 4 \ n=3 | 9) n=12 | 2) n=4 | 1) n=4 | 7=u (6 | 3) n=6 | 9) n=5 | 8) n=12 |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|------------|------------|------------|-------------|------------|---------------|-------------|--------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|-------------|------------|------------|------------|
| (0.20) | (0.21) | (0.17) | (0.14) | (71.0) | (0.19) | (0.17) | (0.54) | (0.18 | | (0.05) | (0.07) | (0.17) | (0.14) | (0.09) | (0.12) | (0.11) | (0.19) | (0.13) | (0:0) | (0.18) |
| 1.07 | 1.07 | 0.87 | 0.61 | 1.12 | 1.03 | 1.27 | 0.92 | 0.94 | | 0.71 | 0.66 | 0.65 | 0.73 | 0.52 | 0.74 | 0.67 | 0.62 | 0.31 | 0.52 | 1.30 |
| (0.12) | (0.17) | (0.05) | (0.24) | (0.12) | (0.28) | (0.11) | (0.26) | (0.06) | | (0.12) | (0.02) | (0.22) | (0.38) | (0.23) | (0.19) | (0.16) | (0.22) | (0.20) | (0.18) | (0.11) |
| 1.26 | 1.30 | 1.22 | 1.27 | 0.70 | 1.47 | 0.76 | 0.65 | 1.26 | | 1.01 | 0.94 | 1.15 | 1.15 | 1.45 | 1.58 | 1.10 | 0.83 | 1.07 | 0.84 | 0.21 |
| (0.08) | (0.06) | (0.11) | (0.11) | (0.22) | (0.14) | (0.12) | (0.22) | (0.30) | | (0.12) | (0.12) | (0.18) | (0.24) | (0.14) | (0.11) | (0.08) | (0.33) | (0.19) | (0.26) | (0.08) |
| 1.13 | 1.15 | 1.12 | 1.15 | 0.82 | 1.29 | 0.92 | 0.79 | 1.22 | | 1.06 | 1.02 | 1.01 | 0.97 | 1.22 | 1.24 | 1.11 | 0.96 | 1.08 | 0.97 | 0.40 |
| 9 | 9 | 2 | ဖ | 4 | ထ | υ. | 4 | т | | ß | 4 | 2 | 4 | 4 | 4 | 4 | 4 | 4 | 4 | ю |
| (0.18) | (0.36) | (0.09) | (0.05) | (0.05) | (0.34) | (0.15) | (0.05) | (0.23) | | (0.02) | (0.10) | (0.10) | (0.08) | (0.11) | (0.06) | (0.02) | (0.03) | (0.0) | (0.12) | (0.04) |
| 0.93 | 1.27 | 0.98 | 0.94 | 0.95 | 1.30 | 0.98 | 1.00 | 1.17 | | 0.95 | 1.04 | 0.99 | 0.96 | 1.05 | 1.04 | 0.96 | 0.93 | 1.11 | 1.07 | 1.10 |
| 4 | 3 | | | | | 7 | | | | | İ | ~ | İ | m | ~ | | | | | |
| (0.18) | (0.14) | | | | | (0.01) | | | | 7.87 | | (0.13) | 01 | (0.22) | (0.24) | | ! ! ! | | | |
| 0.63 | 0.76 | 1.10 | 0.98 | 1.08 | 0.85 | 1.03 | 0.98 | 1.03 | | 0.87 | 0.93 | 0.64 | < 0.10 | 1.02 | 1.34 | 0.90 | 0.86 | 0.85 | 0.79 | 0.80 |
| L309A (328) | N315A (334) | K320A (339) | K322A(341) | S324A(343) | P331A(350) | E333A (352) | T335A(354) | 57 S337A(356) | SCT FCYRIII | 5 K248A(261) | D249A(262) | M252A(265) | S254A(267) | H268A(281) | E272A(285) | Y278A(291) | T289A(306) | E293A(310) | Y296F(313) | S298A(317) |
| 42 | 45 | 48 | 49 | 20 | 65 | 54 | 26 | 57 | - | د 73- | 9 | 7 | 6 | 16 | 19 | 22 | 53 | 32 | 35 | 36 |

| 1 | n | |
|---|---|--|
| | u | |

| 5 | |
|---|--|
| | |

| | _ | ı | _ | |
|---|---|---|---|--|
| ć | 7 | l |) | |

| 25 | |
|----|--|

| 3 | 0 | |
|---|---|--|
| | | |
| | | |

| 4 | 0 | |
|---|---|--|
| | | |

| 4 | 1 | £ | 5 |
|---|---|---|---|
| | • | _ | |

| 38 | R301A(320) | 0.86 | | | 1.06 | 1.06 (0.10) | 4 | 1.12 | (0.12) | 1.26 | (0.14) | 0.21 | (0.08) | 9=0 |
|-----|----------------|--------|-------------|----|------|-------------|---------|------|-------------|------|--------|------|--------|------|
| 383 | R301M(320) | 0.88 | | į | 1.06 | (0.12) | 4 | 1.29 | (0.17) | 1.56 | (0.12) | 0.48 | (0.21) | D=4 |
| 49 | K322A(341) | 0.98 | | İ | 0.94 | (0.05) | vo | 1.15 | (0.11) | 1.27 | (0.24) | 0.61 | (0.14) | n=5 |
| 54 | E333A (352) | 1.03 | 1.03 (0.01) | 7 | 0.98 | (0.15) | ιn - | 0.92 | (0.12) | 0.76 | (0.11) | 1.27 | (0.17) | n=10 |
| 55 | K334A (353) | 1.05 | 1.05 (0.03) | 7 | 1.10 | (0.06) | 4 | 1.01 | 1.01 (0.15) | 0.90 | (0.12) | 1.39 | (0.19) | n=17 |
| NO | EFFECT ON FCYR | Y. | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | 4 K246A(259) | 1.03 | 1.03 | į | | 0.94 (0.06) | 4 | 1.02 | 1.02 (0.10) | 0.92 | (0.15) | 1.14 | (0.38) | n=4 |
| 48 | K246M(259) | 0.69 | | į | 0.83 | (0.05) | 'n | 0.83 | (0.06) | 0.76 | (0.02) | 0.95 | (60.0) | n=3 |
| 53 | K248M(261) | 0.79 | | | 0.95 | (0.06) | 4 | 0.89 | (0.0) | 0.83 | (0.04) | 1.01 | (0.23) | n=3 |
| 8 | I253A(266) | < 0.10 | 01 | | 96.0 | (0.05) | 4 | 1.14 | (0.02) | 1.18 | (0.00) | 1.08 | (0.14) | n=3 |
| 13 | T260A(273) | 1.09 | | į | 0.93 | (0.09) | 4 | 0.89 | (0.14) | 0.87 | (0.10) | 0.89 | (0.08) | n=4 |
| 20 | K274A(287) | 1.18 | | İ | 1.02 | (0.04) | 4 | 0.86 | (60.0) | 96.0 | (0.10) | 1.11 | (0.08) | n=3 |
| 24 | V282A(299) | 1.13 | (0.07) | 2 | 0.96 | (0.02) | 4 | 1.15 | (0.13) | 1.15 | (0.20) | 1.00 | (0.18) | n=4 |
| 28 | K288A(305) | 0.38 | (0.12) | z, | 0.88 | (0.15) | 15 | 1.15 | (0.26) | 1.14 | (0.20) | 1.06 | (0.04) | n=4 |
| 37 | X300F(319) | 0.74 | (0.10) | 7 | 1.07 | (0.15) | 4 | 1.11 | (0.04) | 1.09 | (0.0) | 1.01 | (0.10) | n=3 |
| 43 | Q311A(330) | 1.62 | (0.25) | 4 | 0.93 | (0.05) | 4 | 1.11 | (0.06) | 1.19 | (0.13) | 0.93 | (0.17) | n=3 |
| 46 | K317A(336) | 1.44 | (0.18) | 4 | 0.92 | (0.17) | 9 | 1.13 | (0.05) | 1.18 | (0.27) | 1.10 | (0.23) | n=4 |
| 47 | E318A(337) | 0.85 | | | 0.92 | (0.07) | 4 | 1.04 | 1.04 (0.10) | 1.17 | (0.23) | 1.01 | (0.05) | n=3 |
| 53 | A330Q(349) | 0.76 | | | 96.0 | (0.10) | 4 | 1.01 | 1.01 (0.12) | 1.02 | (0.03) | 0.75 | (0.18) | n=3 |

TABLE 7 CH3 DOMAIN VARIANTS

| Sd n mean sd n 0.90 (0.05) 3 0.99 (0.08) 3 1.04 (0.07) 3 |
|--|
| 0.99 (0.08) 3 0.99 1.04 (0.07) 3 1.05 1.17 (0.11) 3 1.10 |
| 1.09 1.13 (0.11) 3 1.01 (0.10) 0.77 1.04 (0.08) 3 0.89 (0.14) |
| 1.06 |
| 0.95 1.00 (0.03) |
| 1.06 1.09 (0.07) 3 0.84 (0.09) |
| 1.21 (0.11) 2 1.05 (0.04) 3 0.90 (0.02) |
| 0.96 . 1.106 (0.07) 3 1.11 (0.06) |
| 1.04 (0.05) 3 1.13 (0.10) |
| 1.30 (0.08) 4 1.02 (0.04) 3 1.12 (0.10) |
| 1.16 1.00 (0.03) 3 0.82 (0.07) |
| 1.25 (0.24) 3 1.00 (0.04) 3 1.03 (0.10) |
| 0.86 0.98 (0.07) 3 0.84 (0.11) |
| 1.17 (0.19) 5 0.95 (0.02) 3 1.08 (0.06) |
| 1.45 (0.36) 4 1.00 (0.05) 3 0.80 (0.16) |

| n=5 | n=2 | n=3 | n=3 | n=8 | 0=u | n=3 | л=3 | n=3 | n=3 | n=5 | n=3 | n=3 | n=2 | n=5 | n=2 | n=3 | n=2 | n=2 | n=2 | |
|-------------|--------------|--------------|------------|------------------|------------|--------------|------------|--------------|--------------------------------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|------------|--------------|--------------|---------------------------------|--------------|---|
| (71.0) 61.1 | (0.12) | (0.17) | (0.07) | (0.18) | (0.14) | (0.04) | (0.02) | (0.09) | (0.05) | (0.15) | (0.22) | (0.04) | (0.0) | (0.10) | (0.16) | (0.27) | (0.18) | (0.08) | (0.02) | |
| 1.19 | 0.92 | 0.76 | 0.88 | 96.0 | 96.0 | 0.62 | 0.75 | 0.87 | 0.86 | 1.01 | 0.79 | 0.94 | 0.83 | 0.97 | 0.90 | 0.82 | 0.86 | 0.71 | 0.96 | |
| (71.0) | (0.02) | (0.04) | (0.05) | (0.18) | (0.25) | (0.0) | (0.04) | (0.03) | (0.05) | (0.08) | (0.01) | (0.08) | (0.08) | (0.11) | (0.06) | (0.18) | (0.02) | (0.03) | (0.05) | 1 |
| 1.45 | 1.07 | 0.84 | 0.94 | 1.10 | 1.19 | 0.94 | 0.81 | 0.94 | 0.94 | 1.11 | 0.94 | 1.20 | 0.99 | 1.19 | 0.84 | 0.58 | 0.88 | 0.80 | 96.0 | |
| 1.40 (0.17) | (0.01) | (0.11) | (0.04) | (0.19) | (0.13) | (0.03) | (0.15) | (0.10) | (0.10) | (0.12) | (0.20) | (0.11) | (0.04) | (0.12) | (0.08) | (0.15) | (0.11) | (0.05) | (0.01) | |
| 1.40 | 1.18 | 0.95 | 0.92 | 1.05 | 1.08 | 0.87 | 0.98 | 0.99 | 0.97 | 1.05 | 0.92 | 1.17 | 0.95 | 1.11 | 0.83 | 0.64 | 06.0 | 0.68 | 1.00 | |
| m | m | ~ | е | ٣ | 3 | ۳ | 3 | m | ۳ | 3 | ۳ | 9 | ۳ | 9 | е. | ۳ | m | ٣ | 6 | - |
| (0.05) | (0.06) | (0.03) | (0.03) | (0.01) | (0.08) | (60.0) | (0.02) | (0.04) | (0.08) | (0.01) | (0.08) | (0.15) | (0.0) | (0.16) | (0.01) | (0.04) | (0.03) | (0.04) | (0.01) | |
| 1.06 | 1.04 | 1.06 | 1.03 | 1.00 | 1.14 | 1.15 | 1.00 | 1.06 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.01 | 1.13 | 1.10 | 1.13 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.04 | 0.96 | 0.98 | |
| (0.13) 3 | (0.29) 6 | (0.18) 4 | | ; ; ; ; | (0.10) 2 | (0.12) 2 | | | 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 | (0.10) 2 | | (0.04) 2 | (0.07) 3 | 60.0) | (0.07) 2 | | i | 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 | (0.03) 2 | |
| 1.32 | 2.19 | 1.51 | 0.74 | 0.88 | 0.70 | 0.64 | 0.73 | 0.87 | 1.14 | 0.81 | 0.97 | 0.94 | 0.64 | 1.10 | 1.21 | 1.02 | 0.44 | 1.08 | 77.0 | |
| A378 (401)Q | E380 (405) A | E382 (407) A | S383(408)A | N384 (410)A | Q386(414)A | E388 (416) A | N389(417)A | N390 (418) A | Y391 (419) A | Y391 (419) F | K392 (420)A | L398 (426) A | S400 (428) A | D401 (430) A | D413(444)A | K414 (445) A | S415 (446) A | R416(447)A | Q418 (449) A | |
| B17 | B18 | B19 | B20 | B21 | B22 | B23 | B24 | B25 | B26A | -76- | B27 | B28 | B29 | B30 | B31 | B32 | B33 | B34 | B35 | |

| 10 |
|----|
| 15 |
| 20 |
| 25 |
| 30 |
| 35 |
| 40 |
| 45 |

| B37 | B37 N421(452)A | 96.0 | 0.99 | 0.99 (0.01) | m | 0.90 | 0.90 (0.03) | 0.81 | 0.81 (0.0) | 0.87 | 0.87 (0.12) | n=2 |
|-----|----------------|------------------------------|------|--------------|---|------|-------------|------|----------------------------|------|-------------|-----|
| B38 | V422 (453) A | 1.01 | 0.98 | (0.02) | m | 0.89 | (0.0) 68.0 | 0.83 | (0.02) | 0.83 | 0.83 (0.12) | n=2 |
| B39 | S424 (455) A | 1.41 (0.14) 3 | 0.98 | 0.98 (0.03) | m | 1.04 | 1.04 (0.06) | 1.02 | 1.02 (0.02) | 0.88 | 0.88 (0.09) | n=2 |
| B40 | E430(461)A | 0.93 (0.03) 2 1.05 (0.02) | 1.05 | (0.02) | ۳ | 1.24 | 1.24 (0.11) | 1.28 | 1.28 (0.10) | 1.20 | 1.20 (0.18) | n=5 |
| B41 | H433(464)A | 0.41 (0.14) 2 | 0.98 | 0.98 (0.03) | m | 0.92 | 0.92 (0.18) | 0.79 | 0.79 (0.18) | 1.02 | 1.02 (0.15) | n=3 |
| B42 | : | N434 (465) A 3.46 (0.37) 7 | 1.00 | 1.00 .(0.04) | m | 0.97 | (70.0) 76.0 | 0.98 | 0.98 (0.13) | 0.74 | 0.74 (0.12) | n=5 |
| 843 | H435 (466) A | < 0.10 4 | 1.25 | 1.25 (0.09) | m | 0.77 | 0.77 (0.05) | 0.72 | 0.72 (0.05) | 0.78 | 0.78 (0.03) | n=3 |
| 844 | Y436(467)A | < 0.10 2 | 0.99 | 0.99 (0.02) | 2 | 0.93 | 0.93 (0.05) | 0.91 | 0.91 (0.06) | 0.91 | 0.91 (0.15) | n=3 |
| 845 | T437 (468)A | 0.99 (0.07) | 1.00 | 1.00 (0.02) | ۳ | 1.12 | 1.12 (0.18) | 1.00 | 1.00 (0.22) | 0.77 | 0.77 (0.19) | n=5 |
| B46 | Q438 (469) A | 0.79 (0.05) 2 | 1.02 | 1.02 (0.05) | m | 0.80 | 0.80 (0.10) | 0.72 | 0.72 (0.16) | 1.01 | 1.01 (0.17) | n=5 |
| B47 | K439(470)A | B47 K439(470)A 0.70 (0.04) 2 | 0.98 | 0.98 (0.04) | 6 | 0.78 | 0.78 (0.16) | 0.68 | 0.68 (0.22) | 0.86 | 0.86 (0.19) | n≈4 |
| B48 | S440(471)A | 0.99 | 1.01 | 1.01 (0.02) | m | 1.10 | 1.10 (0.15) | 1.11 | 1.11 (0.26) | 0.93 | 0.93 (0.01) | n=3 |
| B49 | S442 (473) A | 0.86 | 1.02 | 1.02 (0.02) | ۳ | 0.98 | 0.98 (0.08) | 0.91 | 0.91 (0.11) | 0.95 | 0.95 (0.10) | n=5 |
| B50 | S444 (475) A | 0.80 | 1.01 | 1.01 (0.02) | е | 1.07 | 1.07 (0.03) | 1.03 | 1.03 (0.03) | 0.88 | 0.88 (0.12) | n=2 |
| B51 | K447 (478) A | 0.62 (0.12) 3 | 1.02 | 1.02 (0.03) | ٣ | 0.95 | 0.95 (0.05) | 0.91 | 0.91 (0.05) 0.84 (0.09) n= | 0.84 | 0.84 (0.09) | n=2 |

Variants with increased binding to a FcvR generally had binding values > 1.20 as determined in this Example and those with reduced binding to a FcvR generally had binding values > 0.80 as determined in this Example. Variants with increased binding to FcRn generally had binding values > 1.30 as determined in this Example and those with reduced binding to FcRn generally had binding values > 0.70 as determined in this Example.

Aside from alanine variants, various non-alanine substitution variants were made, and the FcR binding activity of those variants is summarized in the following table.

TABLE 8 NON-ALANINE VARIANTS

| 162 | Res#EU (Kabat) | FcRn mean sd n | FcyRI mean sd | ď | FcyRIIA mean sc | IIA | FcyRIIB mean sd | SIIB sd | FcyR | FcyRIIIA nean sd | |
|-----|-------------------|---|---------------------------------|--------------|--------------------|------------------|--------------------|-------------|------|---------------------|------|
| 222 | D249(262)E | | | | 0.97 | | 0.99 | | 0.84 | | |
| 176 | T256(269)G | | | | 1.10 | 1.10 (0.03) | 1.06 | 1.06 (0.07) | 0.96 | 0.96 (0.27) | n=2 |
| 254 | T256(269)N | 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 | | | 1.03 | | 0.89 | | 1.13 | | n=1 |
| 157 | D265(278)N | | 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 | | 0.02 | 0.02 (0.01) | 0.03 | 0.03 (0.01) | 0.02 | 0.02 (0.01) | n=3 |
| 158 | D265(278)E | 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 | | | 0.11 | 0.11 (0.04) | 0.03 | 0.03 (0.01) | 0.02 | 0.02 (0.01) | n=3 |
| 189 | S267 (280)G | | | R131 H131 | 1.21 | (0.05) (0.09) | 0.97 | 0.97 (0.16) | 0.09 | 0.09 (0.02) | n=3 |
| 84 | H268 (281) N | | 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 | | 1.33 | | 1.41 | | 0.56 | | n=1 |
| 83 | 11268 (281) S | | | | 1.35 | | 1.38 | | 0.81 | | n |
| 87 | H268(281)Y | | | | 1.19 | | 1.29 | | 0.76 | | n=1 |
| 168 | E269(282)D | | | | 0.89 | 0.89 (0.10) | 0.73 | (0.0) | 1.13 | (0.21) | n=2 |
| 169 | E269(282)Q | | | | 0.08 | (0.01) | 0.16 | 0.16 (0.00) | 0.28 | 0.28 (0.03) | n=2 |
| 92 | D270 (283) N | | | | 90.0 | 0.06 (0.01) | 0.10 | 0.10 (0.02) | 0.04 | 0.04 (0.00) | n=2 |
| 93 | D270(283)E | ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; ; | | | 0.55 | 0.55 (0.05) | 0.38 | (0.02) | 1.17 | 1.17 (0.01) | n=2 |
| 223 | E272 (285) Q | | | | 1.93 | | 1.81 | | 0.82 | | -L |
| 224 | E272 (285) N | | | , | 0.43 | | 0.23 | | 0.50 | | n=1 |
| 167 | K274 (287)Q | | | | 0.86 | | 0.94 | | 0.62 | - | = |
| 165 | N276(289)K | | | | 0.81 | | 0.77 | | 0.61 | | n=1 |

5

10

n=1 n=3 1 1 1 1 1 1 n=3 n=3 n=1 n=2 15 1.13 (0.13) 1.04 (0.08) 1.09 (0.06) 0.45 (0.09) 0.99 (0.04) 1.15 (0.18) 0.92 (0.08) 0.88 (0.02) 0.72 (0.08) 0.85 0.94 0.95 0.96 1.32 0.98 1.40 1.26 1.30 1.08 1.23 20 1.31 (0.17) (0.13) 1.38 (0.04) 0.88 (0.07) 0.75 (0.10) 0.12 (0.01) (0.06)0.29 (0.07) 0.25 0.77 1.24 1.13 1.23 1.07 1.28 1.23 1.38 1.34 1.21 1.20 25 1.13 (0.04) (0.03) 1.26 (0.07) (0.06)0.71 (0.17) 0.47 (0.12) 0.54 (0.16) 0.90 (0.02) 0.21 (0.09) 1.07 30 1.10 1.05 1.03 1.52 1.72 1.17 1.27 1.07 1.14 1.41 35 1.25 1.14 40 45

N286 (303) S N286 (303) D K290 (307) Q K290 (307) E K290 (307) E

238

23

E283(300)D N286(303)Q

> 은 | 원 -**79-**

R292 (309) K

80

177

K290 (307) R K290 (307) G

18

11

R292 (309) N R292 (309) N E293 (310) D E293 (310) D E293 (310) K

82

R292 (309) H

55

50

N276 (289)Q D280 (295)N E283(300)Q E283(300)S E283(300)N

227

D280 (295) S

-80-

n=3

0.36 (0.05)

n=1 n≕1 n=1

0.07 1.28

0.08

0.18

1.25

1.28 1.00 98.0 1.06 0.94

98.0 0.65

0.86 0.42

0.91

n=2

1.26 (0.04)

1.47 (0.33) 0.22 (0.05) 0.83 (0.10)

1.34 (0.27)

0.23 (0.06) 0.92 (0.09)

1.41

1.27 1.15 1.36

0.77 0.81 1.37

0.37

99.0 0.82 1.44 1.04 1.36 1.68

0.73 1.62 1.00

216 S324(343)E 208 K326(345)S 209 K326(345)N 210 K326(345)Q 211 K326(345)D

213 S324(343)N 214 \$324 (343) 0 215 S324 (343) K

0.83

0.06 (0.01)

n=2

0.75 (0.04) 0.66 (0.03)

E333 (352) K

153 E333(352)R

E333 (352) N 143 E333(352)S

142

0.85 (0.14) 0.84 (0.05)

0.56 (0.10)

0.59 (0.04) 0.70 (0.05)

1.10 (0.03)

0.64 (0.09) 0.52 (0.07)

| = | | |
|---|--|--|
| 9 | | |
| | | |

| 10 | |
|----|--|

| 15 | |
|----|--|

| i | 2 | 7 | 7 | |
|-------|---|---|---|--|
| | - | • | | |
| | | | | |

| • |) | , | 5 | |
|---|---|---|---|--|
| 4 | 5 | Ġ | , | |

| จก |
|----|

35

| 4 | ^ | |
|---|---|--|
| 4 | u | |

| 1 | 5 |
|---|---|

50

| A327 (346) G | | A330 (349) D | |
|--------------|--|--------------|--|
| 159 | | 196 | |
| -81- | | | |

197 A330 (349) K

198 P331 (350) S 199 P331 (350) N 203 P331 (350) K

P331 (350) E

200

141 E333(352)Q

131 A327 (346) S

212 K326(345)E

| | ^ | |
|---|---|--|
| 7 | u | |

| | _ | |
|---|---|--|
| 4 | _ | |

| | b | , | ١ |
|---|---|---|---|
| _ | ı | Ļ | , |

| 25 | • |
|----|---|
| | |
| | |

| 30 | |
|----|--|
| 30 | |
| | |

40

45

50

| | | | | | | | 01 |
|-----|-----|--------------|--|-------------|-------------|---------------|------------|
| | 154 | E333(352)D | | | | 1.26 (0.04) | 2 |
| | 178 | E333(352)G | 1 | 0.87 | 0.76 | 1.05 | <u>-</u> |
| | 179 | K334 (353) G | 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 | 0.76 (0.08) | 0.60 (0.13) | 0.88 (0.22) | n=5 |
| | 135 | K334 (353) R | # | 1.15 (0.09) | 1.33 (0.18) | (20.0) 0.68 | ٦ <u>.</u> |
| | 136 | K334 (353)Q | | 1.08 (0.11) | 1.10 (0.21) |) 1.31 (0.26) | n=7 |
| | 137 | K334 (353) N | | 1.16 (0.11) | 1.29 (0.30) |) 1.15 (0.16) | n=7 |
| | 138 | K334 (353) S | 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 | 1.01 (0.11) | 1.03 ().05) | 1.19 (0.08) | n=3 |
| | 139 | K334 (353) E | ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! ! | 0.74 (0.15) | 0.72 (0.12) | 1.30 (0.09) | n=4 |
| | 140 | K334 (353) D | | 0.51 (0.09) | 0.40 (0.03) | 1.13 (0.09) | n=4 |
| | 190 | K334 (353) M | 1.18 | 1.06 | 1.01 | 1.35 | n-1 |
| -82 | 191 | K334 (353) Y | 1.15 | 1.08 | 1.05 | 1.31 | n=1 |
| _ | 192 | K334 (353)W | 1.16 | 0.94 | 0.91 | 1.07 | n=1 |
| | 193 | КЗЗ4 (353) Н | 1.11 | 1.09 | 1.07 | 1.26 | n=1 |
| | 220 | K334 (353) V | 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 | 1.13 (0.11) | 1.09 (0.15) |) 1.34 (0.18) | n=3 |
| | 221 | K334 (353) L | 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 | 1.05 | 1.09 | 1.38 | n=1 |
| | 171 | T335(354)Q | | 0.86 | 0.79 | 0.84 | n l |
| | 194 | T335 (354) E | 0 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 | 1.24 | 1.30 | 1.19 | lel ! |
| | 195 | T335 (354) K | | 1.19 | 1.14 | 1.30 | |
| | 273 | A339 (359) T | 1.23 | 1.11 | 1.23 | 1.42 | n=1 |
| | | | | | | | |

The following table summarizes the FeR binding activity of various combination variants.

| 1 | | |
|---|--|--|

| • | _ | |
|---|---|--|
| | | |

| 15 | ì | |
|----|---|--|

| 1 | 2 | 1 |) |
|---|---|---|---|
| | _ | | |
| | | | |

| 25 | |
|----|--|
| | |

| 5 | ċ | 7 | |
|---|---|---|--|

| 40 | |
|----|--|
| 40 | |

| | c | | |
|----|---|---|--|
| 4. | J | ١ | |

| 50 | |
|----|--|

| | ZE Z |
|-------|---------|
| э. | VARI |
| TABLE | INATION |
| | 8 |

| | | | | | | | | INATIC | COMBINATION VARIANTS | NTS | | | |
|------|---|------------------|----------|-------------|--------------------------------|------------------|--------|-------------|------------------------|--------------|-------------------|---------------------|-------|
| 162 | Res#EU (Kabat) | FcRn mean so | sd sd | - c | mean | FcyRI | - c | Fcy mean | FcyRIIA an sd | Fcy) mean | FcyRIIB ean sd | FcyRIIIA mean sd | |
| 96 | S267 (280) A H268 (281) A | | | | 9 0 0 0 8 | i 1 1 1 | | 1.41 | 0 9 11 0 0 | 1.72 | | 0.84 | n=1 |
| 134 | E333(352)A K334(353)A | | | 1 | | | t 1 | 0.72 | 0.72 (0.08) | 0.63 | 0.63 (0.13) | 1.30 (0.12) | n=5 |
| 1059 | 9 T256(269)A S298(317)A | | - | | ! ! ! | | | 0.44 | 0.44 (0.03) | 0.22 | 0.22 (0.04) | 1.41 (0.06) | n=2 |
| 1051 | 1 T256(269)A D280(295)A S298(317)A T307(326)A | | ! | <u> </u> | t 1 6 6 6 | | | 0.47 | 0.47 (0.01) | 0.30 | 0.30 (0.03) | 1.21 (0.26) | n=2 |
| 106 | T256(269) A D280(295) A R292(309) A S298(317) A T307(326) A | ! ! ! ! | | | (| | | 0.11 | | 0.08 | | 0.90 | na 1 |
| 107 | S298 (317) A E333 (352) A | | | | | | | 0.34 | 0.34 (0.05) | 0.16 | 0.16 (0.08) | 1.53 (0.24) | n=5 |
| 109 | S298 (317) A K334 (353) A | | ! | (1 1 | | | | 0.41 | 0.41 (0.07) | 0.19 | 0.19 (0.08) | 1.62 (0.34) | 9=u (|
| 110 | S298 (317) A E333 (352) A K334 (353) A | | | | | | | 0.35 | 0.35 (0.13) | 0.18 | 0.18 (0.08) | 1.66 (0.42) | n=11 |
| 246 | S267(280)A E258(271)A | | | | | | | 1.62 | 1.62 (0.15) | 2.01 | 2.01 (0.45) | 1.04 (0.12) | n=2 |
| 247 | S267 (280) A R255 (268) A | | | | | | | 1.60 | 1.60 (0.18) | 1.72 | 1.72 (0.13) | 0.88 (0.07) | n=3 |

-83-

on simble of

| | n | |
|---|---|--|
| 7 | " | |

| 15 | n=2 | n=3 | n=3 | n=2 | n=2 | n=2 | n=1 | n=2 |
|----|------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|--|------------------------------|--|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| 20 | 1.13 (0.07) | 0.95 (0.05) | 0.92 (0.09) | 0.89 (0.04) | 1.02 | 96.0 | 0.92 | 0.88 |
| 25 | 1.96 (0.37) | 1.82 (0.32) | 1.85 (0.10) | 2.03 (0.30) | 1.05 (0.11) | 0.99 (0.11) | 1.04 | 0.96 (0.17) |
| 30 | 1.54 (0.08) | 1.51 (0.13) | 1.67 (0.11) | 1.48 (0.12) | 1.02 (0.07) | (90.0) 66.0 | 0.98 | 0.94 (0.11) |
| 35 | | | | | | | | |
| 40 | | | | | 8.55 (0.94) 3 | (1.1) | 1.01 (0.01) 2 | 3.15 (0.42) 2 |
| 45 | | | | | į | 1 12.6 (1.7) | į | : : |
| 50 | S267 (280) A D280 (295) A | S267 (280) A E272 (285) A | S267 (280) A E293 (310) A | S267(280)A E258(271)A D280(295)A R255(268)A | E380 (405) A N434 (465) A | E380 (405) A N434 (465) A T307 (326) A | E380(405)A L309(328)A | N434 (465) A K288 (305) A |
| | 248 | 250 | 251 | 264 | 269 | 270 | 271 | 272 |
| | | | | | | • | -84- | |

5

10

DISCUSSION

Biochemistry 20:2361-2370 (1981)), was performed. Each exposed amino acid in CH2 and CH3 was individually changed to alanine and the variant IgG assayed against all five human receptors; all variants were evaluated using humanized anti-ligE E27 IgG1 as the parent polypeptide. FcvRi

This study includes a complete mapping of human IgG1 for human FcyRI, FcyRIIA, FcyRIIB, FcyRIIIA, and FcRn. An alanine-scan of all amino acids in human IgG1 Fc (CH2 and CH3 domains) exposed to solvent, based on the crystal structure of human Fc (Deisenhofer,

15

and FcRn are high affinity receptors and monomeric IgG could be evaluated in the assays for these two receptors. Fc_YRIIA, Fc_YRIIB and Fc_YRIIIA are low affinity receptors and required use of an immune complex. Hence, an ELISA-type assay was used for Fc_YRIIA, Fc_YRIIB, and Fc_YRIIIA, in which pre-formed hexamers, consisting of three anti-IgE E27 and three IgE molecules were bound to the Fc_YR and either anti-human IgG Fc-HRP or protein G-HRP used as detection reagent. In order to increase binding, these hexamers could be linked into multimers by addition

20

25

30

35

of human VEGF (using anti-VEGF IgE). The hexamers bound to the low affinity Fc_YR significantly better than the IgG monomers; the multimers bound better than the hexamers (Figs. 15A and 15B). The hexameric complexes were used since these provided sufficient binding and required

•

reagents, as long as the antigen contains at least two identical binding sites per molecule for the antibody. As an example, VEGF contains two binding sites per VEGF dimer for anti-VEGF A.4.6.1 (Kim et al., Growth Factors 7:53 (1992) and Kim et al. Nature 362:841 (1993)).

less IgG. Complexes formed using other antibody:antigen combinations are also possible

VEGF:anti-VEGF multimers also bound to the low affinity Fc_YRIIA and Fc_YRIIA (Figs. 16A and 16B).

(G16, Fig. 17).

Once the complete alanine-scan was performed, several classes of alanine variants were found. Some variants exhibited reduced binding to all Fc_YR (G14, Fig. 17), while other variants showed reduced binding only to one Fc_YR (G36, Fig. 17), improved binding only to one Fc_YR (G15, G54, G55, Fig. 17), or simultaneous reduction to one Fc_YR with improvement to another

40

Individual alanine variants were also combined in a single variant Fc region; e.g. combining S298(317)A with K334(353)A improved binding to Fc_YRIIIA more than either S298(317)A or K334(353)A alone (Figs. 18A and B; and compare variants 36, 55, and 109 in Tables 6 and 9) (residue numbers in parentheses are those of the EU index as in Kabat). Similarly, combining S298(317)A with E333(352)A improved binding to Fc_YRIIIA more than either S298(317)A or E333(352)A alone (compare variants 36, 54, and 107 in Tables 6 and 9).

50

35

45

Selected IgG variants were also tested for their binding to Fc γ R transfected into mammalian cells. The α -chain extracellular portion of human Fc γ RIIIA was transfected into CHO cells using a GPI-link, whereas for human Fc γ RIIB the full-length receptor was transfected into

5

CHO cells. For the variants tested, the pattern of binding to the cells was the same as the pattern

10

15

20

25

15

20

25

30

30

35

40

45

of binding in the protein:protein (ELISA) assay (Figs. 18A-B and 19A-B).

One application of these variants is to improve the ADCC effector function of an antibody. This can be achieved by modifying Fc region amino acids at one or more residues which would lead to improved binding to FcyRIIIA. Improved FcyRIIIA binding would lead to improved binding by NK cells, which carry only FcyRIIIA and can mediate ADCC. Selected alanine variants which were either reduced in binding to FcyRIIIA (variants 17, 18, 34; Table 6), had no effect on FcyRIIIA binding (variant 31; Table 6), or had improved binding to FcyRIIIA (variants 30, 36; Table 6) were tested in an in vitro ADCC assay using human PBMCs as effector cells. Since the target cells were HER2-overexpressing SKBR3 cells, the IgG Fc variants used in this assay were generated by substituting the V_t/V_t domains of anti-IgE E27 with those from anti-HER2 antibody; HERCEPTIN® (humAb4D5-8 in Table 1 of Carter et al. PNAS (USA) 89:4285-4289 (1992)). The pattern of ADCC exhibited by the variants correlated well with the pattern of binding to FcyRIIIA (Figs. 20 and 21). Notably the variant which showed the best improvement in binding to FcyRIIIA in protein:protein assays, variant 36 S298(317)A, also showed improvement in ADCC compared to wildtype HERCEPTIN® at 1.25 ng/ml (Fig. 21).

EXAMPLE 5

Blnd of Fc Variants to Polymorphic Fc Receptors

Allelic variants of several of the human FcyR have been found in the human population. These allelic variant forms have been shown to exhibit differences in binding of human and murine IgG and a number of association studies have correlated clinical outcomes with the presence of specific allelic forms (reviewed in Lehmbecher et al. Blood 94(12):4220-4232 (1999)). Several studies have investigated two forms of FcyRIIA, R131 and H131, and their association with clinical outcomes (Hatta et al. Genes and Immunity 1:53-60 (1999); Yap et al. Lupus 8:305-310 (1999); and Lorenz et al. European J. Immunogenetics 22:397-401 (1995)). Two allelic forms of FcyRIIIA, F158 and V158, are only now being investigated (Lehrnbecher et al., supra; and Wu et al. J. Clin. Invest. 100(5):1059-1070 (1997)). In this example, selected IgG variants were tested against both allelic forms of FcyRIIA or FcyRIIIA. Fc receptor binding assays were performed essentially as described in the above examples. However, for FcyRIIIA-V158, both (a) the low affinity receptor binding assay of Example 1 (which analyzes binding of the IgG complex to FcyRllIA-V158); and (b) the high affinity FcyR binding assay of Example 4 (which analyzes binding of IgG monomer to FcyRIIIA-V158) were carried out. The results of these studies are summarized in Table 10 below.

TABLE 10 Binding of Variants to FcyRIIA and FcyRIIIA Polymorphic Receptors

1.64 1.21

0.94

0.90 (0.18) 9 1.15 (0.18) 3

R292(309)A 0.27 (0.14) 9 R292(309)K 0.71 (0.17) 3 0.97

1.00

0.68 0.79

0.56 0.91

0.45 (0.09) 3 0.88 (0.02) 3 0.99 (0.04) 2 0.66 (0.14) 5

0.47 (0.12) 3

R292 (309) Q R292 (309) N E293 (310)Q

0.21 (0.09)

R292 (309) H

0.92 (0.08)

0.26 1.96 1.88

8

(0.04)

1.02

1.30 (0.18)12

0.40 (0.08)12 0.87 (0.17) 4

0.37

174 E294(311)D S298 (317) A S298 (317) G S298 (317) T S298 (317) N S298 (317) V

0.84 0.14

E294(311)A 0.87 (0.19) 5

33

E294(311)Q 1.01

173

0.85 (0.03) 0.54 (0.16)

0.88

0.46 (0.09) 4

0.17

0.67

0.34 (0.04) 3 0.84 (0.15) 4

1.12 (0.18)12

1.37 (0.13) 2 1.11 (0.06) 2

1.04

1.12 (0.12) 4

V305 (324) A

40

T307 (326) A 1.19 (0.37)12 N315(334)A 1.15 (0.06) 5

S298(317)L 1.14 (0.12) 3

219 218

0.11 (0.06)

1.07 (0.21) 1.10 (0.23)

1.04

K320(339)A 1.12 (0.11) 4

K317(336)A 1.13 (0.05)

45

E333(352)A 0.92 (0.12)10

0.75

96.0

0.89 (0.20) 3

0.41 (0.21) 3 0.08 (0.01)

99.0

0.06 (0.01)

0.88 0.83

0.33 (0.19)

1.10 (0.10) 2

1.27 (0.17)10

0.87 (0.17) 4

| • | |
|---|--|
| л | |
| _ | |
| | |

| 10 | |
|----|--|

| 1 | 5 | |
|---|---|--|

| 2 | ۵ | 1 |
|---|---|---|

| 25 | |
|----|--|

| 30 |
|----|
| |

| 3 | ď | 5 |
|---|---|---|
| - | ٠ | • |

| 1 | 5 | |
|---|---|--|
| | | |

| c | , | ١ |
|---|---|---|

| ř | i |
|----|---|
| | |
| 00 | |

72

36

| 4 | n | |
|---|---|--|

| 1 | 5 | |
|---|---|--|
| | | |
| | | |

| 20 | |
|----|--|
| | |
| | |

| 2 | H | Ľ | ŧ | |
|---|---|---|---|--|
| _ | ٠ | | • | |

| | 3 | , | , |
|---|---|---|---|
| ٠ | 3 | 1 | ٠ |

| : | 3 | • | 5 |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | | |

| 40 | |
|----|--|
| | |

| 4 | 5 | |
|---|---|--|

| } | | | ~ | - | | | 7 | } | | - : | - ! | - 1 | | ~ } | <u> </u> | <u> </u> | - | | H : | ٦ ! | |
|--------------|------------------|--------------|------------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|-----------------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|------------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|------------------|--------------|--|
| 00 | . و | 7(| 11 | 13 | 0 | 33 | 1.60 (0.01) | 81 | 12 | D, | 12 | 5 | | 8 | 81 | ,2 | 3 | 91 | 6 | 6 | |
| 1.00 | 0.56 | 1.07 | 0.81 | 0.83 | 1.70 | 1.23 | 1.6 | 0.88 | 1.92 | 1.70 | 1.82 | 2.75 | | 1.28 | 2.08 | 1.72 | 1.53 | 2.06 | 2.89 | 3.59 | |
| - | -1 | - | | | п | | 9) 3 | | 1) 2 | 6) 2 | - | - | - | п | 7 | - | 1 | 1 | 1 | 7 | |
| | | | | | | | (0.09) | | (0.01) | (0.06) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1.05 | 0.64 | 0.99 | .0.88 | 0.93 | 1.00 | | 1.07 | | 1.27 | 1.19 | 1.25 | 1.17 | 1.07 | 0.94 | 0.99 | 0.98 | 0.96 | 0.97 | 1.00 | 0.96 | |
| 5 (| .) 2 | 1 | . 3 | 1 2 | . 3 | г | 71(| 5 (| 7 (| 7 (|) 3 | ~ | 4 | 5 | н | 1 | н | ٦ | 9 | | |
| (0.03) | (0.10) | | (0.14) | (0.02) | 1.26 (0.04) | | 71(01.0) | (0.0) | 1.31 (0.26) | (0.16) | (0.08) | (0.09) | (0.09) | (0.22) | | | | | (0.18) | | |
| 1.10 | 0.56 | 0.94 | 0.85 | 0.84 | 1.26 | 1.05 | 1.39 | 0.68 | 1.31 | 1.15 | 1.19 | 1.30 | 1.13 | 0.88 | 1.35 | 1.31 | 1.07 | 1.26 | 1.34 | 1.38 | |
| , | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 1 1 1 1 | | i ! ! ! | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | ! ! ! ! ! | | | | | | | ! ! ! ! | | | | | ! ! ! ! | | |
| 05) 2 | 04) 2 | | ! ! ! | 04) 2 | | 1 | 15) 17 | 2 (60 | 11) 7 | 11) 7 | 11) 3 | 15) 4 | 19) 4 | 38) 5 | н | 1 | 1 | - | 11) 3 | - | |
| 0.70 (0.05) | 9 (0.04) | | | (0.04) | ! ! | | 1.01 (0.15)17 | (0.09) | 3 (0.11) | 5 (0.11) | (0.11) | (0.15) | (60.0) | (0.08) | 10 | | - | | 1.13 (0.11) | | |
| 0.70 | 0.59 | | ! ! ! | 0.75 | | 0.87 | 1.01 | 1.15 | 1.08 | 1.16 | 1.01 | 0.74 | 0.51 | 0.76 | 1.06 | 1.08 | 0.94 | 1.09 | 1.13 | 1.05 | |
| 352)0 | 352) N | 352) S | 352) K | 352)R | 352) D | 352) G | 353) A | 353) R | 353)0 | 353) N | 353) S | 353) E | 353) D | 353) G | 353)M | 353) Y | 353) W | 353) H | 353) V | 353)L | |
| E333 (352) Q | E333 (352) N | E333 (352) S | E333 (352) K | E333 (352) R | E333 (352) D | E333 (352) G | K334 (353) A | K334 (353) R | K334 (353)Q | K334 (353) N | K334 (353) S | K334 (353) E | K334 (353) D | K334 (353) G | K334 (353) M | K334 (353) Y | K334 (353) W | K334 (353) H | K334 (353) V | K334 (353) L | |
| 141 | 142 | 143 | 152 | 153 | 154 | 178 | 55 | 135 | 136 1 | 137 | 138 | 139 | 140 | 179 | 190 | 191 | 192 | 193 | 220 | 221 | |

| u | | |
|---|--|--|
| | | |

| 1 | n | |
|---|---|--|
| | | |

| • | - | 1 | - | 1 | - | | | 1 |
|---|---------------|------------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|------------------------------|--|-----------------------------------|
| ; | 0.78 | 0.54 | 0.24 | 0.36 | 0.26 | | 1 | |
| | 1 | i ; ; ; | | | | | 1.19 (0.18) 3 | |
| | 0.96 | | | | | | 1.19 | |
| | 1.03 (0.19) 3 | 1 | r. | 1 | | 1 | 1.66 (0.42)11 | 1 |
| | 1.03 | 0.86 | 0.23 | 0.42 | 0.33 | 0.84 | 1.66 | 0.92 |
| | | | | | | 1.07 (0.06) 2 | | 0.92 1 1.1 |
| | 1.29 (0.14) 3 | Ħ | 1 | 1 | - | 1.54 (0.12) 3 | 0.35 (0.13)11 | 1 |
| | 1.29 | 1.00 | 0.86 | 1.06 | 0.94 | 1.54 | | 0.98 |
| | P331 (350) A | P331 (350) S | P331 (350) N | P331 (350) E | P331 (350) K | S267 (280) A H268 (281) A | S298 (317) A E333 (352) A K334 (353) A | 271 E380(405)A 0.98 L309(328)A |
| | 65 | 198 | 199 | ı | | 96 | 110 | 271 |

For FcγRIIIA, the pattern of binding of the selected IgG1 variants to the relatively higher affinity FcγRIIIA-V158 was the same as for the relatively lower affinity FcγRIIIA-F158 (the F158 form was used in assaying all variants). IgG1 variants which showed improved binding to the FcγRIIIA-V158 form also showed improved binding to the FcγRIIIA-V158 form though the improvement was not as pronounced. For FcγRIIA-R131 (used in assaying all variants) and FcγRIIA-H131, the binding pattern of the selected IgG1 variants did show some distinct differences. S267(280)A, H268(281)A, and S267(280)A/H268(281)A exhibited improved binding to FcγRIIA-R131, compared to native IgG1, but not to FcγRIIA-H131. In contrast, S267(280)G showed improved binding to FcγRIIA-R131 but reduced binding to FcγRIIA-H131 (Table 10). Other variants bound similarly to both allelic FcγRIIA forms: V305(324)A, T307(326)A, N315(324)A, K317(336)A, and K320(339)A.

-91-

the the same of the same of

Claims

r and the second are

5

WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:

10

 A variant of a parent polypeptide comprising an Fc region, which variant mediates antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC) in the presence of human effector cells more effectively, or binds an Fc gamma receptor (FcγR) with better affinity, than the parent polypeptide and comprises at least one amino acid modification in the Fc region.

10

15

25

30

2. The variant of claim 1 which comprises an antibody.

15

3. The variant of claim 1 wherein the parent polypeptide Fc region comprises a human IgG Fc region.

The variant of claim 3 wherein the human IgG Fc region comprises a human IgG1,
 IgG2, IgG3 or IgG4 Fc region.

20

5. The variant of claim 1 which mediates ADCC about 1.5 fold to about 100 fold more effectively than the parent polypeptide.

 The variant of claim 1 which binds an FcγRlil with better affinity than the parent polypeptide.

25

7. The variant of claim 6 which further binds an FcγRII with worse affinity than the parent polypeptide.

8. The variant of claim 1 which comprises at least one amino acid substitution in the Fc region.

30

The variant of claim 1 which comprises at least one amino acid modification in a
 CH2 domain of the Fc region.

 The variant of claim 1 which comprises at least one amino acid modification in the Fc region, other than in a lower hinge region thereof.

35

11. The variant of claim 1 which comprises an amino acid substitution at any one or more of amino acid positions 256, 290, 298, 312, 326, 330, 333, 334, 360, 378 or 430 of the Fc region, wherein the numbering of the residues in the Fc region is that of the EU index as in Kabat.

12. The variant of claim 11 which comprises two or more amino acid substitutions at the amino acid positions listed therein.

40

13. The variant of claim 11 which comprises three or more amino acid substitutions at the amino acid positions listed therein.

45

14. A polypeptide comprising a variant Fc region with altered Fc gamma receptor (FcγR) binding affinity, which polypeptide comprises an amino acid modification at any one or more of amino acid positions 238, 239, 248, 249, 252, 254, 255, 256, 258, 265, 267, 268, 269, 270, 272, 276, 278, 280, 283, 285, 286, 289, 290, 292, 293, 294, 295, 296, 298, 301, 303, 305, 307, 309, 312, 315, 320, 322, 324, 326, 327, 329, 330, 331, 333, 334, 335, 337, 338, 340, 360, 373, 376, 378, 382, 388, 389, 398, 414, 416, 419, 430, 434, 435, 437, 438 or 439 of the Fc region,

50

wherein the numbering of the residues in the Fc region is that of the EU index as in Kabat.

5

15. The polypeptide of claim 14 wherein the variant Fc region comprises a variant human tgG Fc region.

10

16. The polypeptide of claim 14 which displays reduced binding to an Fc γ R and comprises an amino acid modification at any one or more of amino acid positions 238, 239, 248, 249, 252, 254, 265, 268, 269, 270, 272, 278, 289, 292, 293, 294, 295, 296, 298, 301, 303, 322, 324, 327, 329, 333, 335, 338, 340, 373, 376, 382, 388, 389, 414, 416, 419, 434, 435, 437, 438 or 439 of the Fc region, wherein the numbering of the residues in the Fc region is that of the EU

15

index as in Kabat.

10

15

20

25

30

17. The polypeptide of claim 14 which displays reduced binding to an FcyRI.

20

18. The polypeptide of claim 17 which displays reduced binding to the FcγRI and comprises an amino acid modification at any one or more of amino acid 238, 265, 269, 270, 327 or 329 of the Fc region, wherein the numbering of the residues in the Fc region is that of the EU index as in Kabat.

_-

19. The polypeptide of claim 14 which displays reduced binding to an FcyRII.

25

20. The polypeptide of claim 19 which displays reduced binding to the FcγRII and comprises an amino acid modification at any one or more of amino acid positions 238, 265, 269, 270, 292, 294, 295, 298, 303, 324, 327, 329, 333, 335, 338, 373, 376, 414, 416, 419, 435, 438 or 439 of the Fc region, wherein the numbering of the residues in the Fc region is that of the EU index as in Kabat.

30

21. The polypeptide of claim 14 which displays reduced binding to an FcyRIII.

35

22. The polypeptide of claim 21 which displays reduced binding to the FcγRiII and comprises an amino acid modification at any one or more of amino acid 238, 239, 248, 249, 252, 254, 265, 268, 269, 270, 272, 278, 289, 293, 294, 295, 296, 301, 303, 322, 327, 329, 338, 340, 373, 376, 382, 388, 389, 416, 434, 435 or 437 of the Fc region, wherein the numbering of the residues in the Fc region is that of the EU index as in Kabat.

23. The polypeptide of claim 14 which displays increased binding to an Fc γ R and comprises an amino acid modification at any one or more of amino acid positions 255, 256, 258, 267, 268, 272, 276, 280, 283, 285, 286, 290, 298, 301, 305, 307, 309, 312, 315, 320, 322, 326, 330, 331, 333, 334, 337, 340, 360, 378, 398 or 430 of the Fc region, wherein the numbering of the residues in the Fc region is that of the EU index as in Kabat.

40

24. The polypeptide of claim 23 which displays increased binding to an FcyRIII.

45

25. The polypeptide of clalm 24 which further displays decreased binding to an FcyRII.

50

26. The polypeptide of claim 25 which displays increased binding to the FcyRIII and further displays decreased binding to the FcyRIII, wherein the polypeptide comprises an amino acid modification at positions 298 and/or 333 of the Fc region, wherein the numbering of the residues in the Fc region is that of the EU index as in Kabat.

-93-

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

20

30

35

27. The polypeptide of claim 23 which displays increased binding to an FcyRII.

28. The polypeptide of claim 27 which displays increased binding to the FcγRII and comprises an amino acid modification at any one or more of amino acid 255, 256, 258, 267, 268, 272, 276, 280, 283, 285, 286, 290, 301, 305, 307, 309, 312, 315, 320, 322, 326, 330, 331, 337, 340, 378, 398 or 430 of the Fc region, wherein the numbering of the residues in the Fc region is that of the EU index as in Kabat.

 The polypeptide of claim 27 which further displays decreased binding to an FcyRIII.

- 30. The polypeptide of claim 29 which displays increased binding to the FcγRII and further displays decreased binding to the FcγRIII, wherein the polypeptide comprises an amino acid modification at any one or more of amino acid positions 268, 272, 298, 301, 322 or 340 of the Fc region, wherein the numbering of the residues in the Fc region is that of the EU index as in Kabat.
 - 31. A polypeptide comprising a variant Fc region with altered neonatal Fc receptor (FcRn) binding affinity, which polypeptide comprises an amino acid modification at any one or more of amino acid positions 238, 252, 253, 254, 255, 256, 265, 272, 286, 288, 303, 305, 307, 309, 311, 312, 317, 340, 356, 360, 362, 376, 378, 380, 382, 386, 388, 400, 413, 415, 424, 433, 434, 435, 436, 439 or 447 of the Fc region, wherein the numbering of the residues in the Fc region is that of the EU index as in Kabat.
 - 32. The polypeptide of claim 31 which displays reduced binding to an FcRn.
 - 33. The polypeptide of claim 32 which displays reduced binding to the FcRn and comprises an amino acid modification at any one or more of amino acid positions 252, 253, 254, 255, 288, 309, 386, 388, 400, 415, 433, 435, 436, 439 or 447 of the Fc region, wherein the numbering of the residues in the Fc region is that of the EU index as in Kabat.
- 25 34. The polypeptide of claim 31 which displays increased binding to FcRn.
 - 35. The polypeptide of claim 34 which displays increased binding to FcRn and comprises an amino acid modification at any one or more of amino acid positions 238, 256, 265, 272, 286, 303, 305, 307, 311, 312, 317, 340, 356, 360, 362, 376, 378, 380, 382, 413, 424 or 434 of the Fc region, wherein the numbering of the residues in the Fc region is that of the EU index as in Kabat.
 - 36. A composition comprising the polypeptide variant of claim 1 and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.
 - 37. The composition of claim 36 which is sterile.
 - 38. Isolated nucleic acid encoding the polypeptide variant of claim 1.
 - A vector comprising the nucleic acid of claim 38.
 - 40. A host cell containing the vector of claim 39.

-94-

55

| | | | Temestories. |
|----|----|-------------------|---|
| 5 | | | |
| | | 41. | A method for producing a polypeptide variant comprising culturing the host cell of |
| | | claim 40 so th | nat the nucleic acid is expressed. |
| | | 42. | The process of claim 41 further comprising recovering the polypeptide variant from |
| 10 | | the host cell o | zulture. |
| | 5 | 43. | A method for treating a disorder in a mammal comprising administering to the |
| | | mammal a the | erapeutically effective amount of the polypeptide variant of claim 1. |
| | | 44. | A method for making a variant Fc region with altered Fc receptor (FcR) binding |
| 15 | | affinity, or alte | ered antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC) activity, comprising: |
| | | (a) | introducing one or more amino acid modifications into an Fc region of a parent |
| | 10 | polypeptide ir | order to generate a variant Fc region; |
| | | (b) | determining binding of the variant Fc region to an FcR, or determining ADCC |
| 20 | | activity of the | variant Fc region. |
| | | 45. | The method of claim 44 wherein step (b) comprises determining binding of the |
| | | variant Fc reg | ion to an FcR <i>in vitro</i> . |
| | 15 | 46. | The method of claim 44 wherein step (b) comprises identifying a variant Fc region |
| 25 | | with improved | FcR binding affinity, or with improved ADCC activity. |
| | | 47. | The method of claim 44 wherein the FcR is human Fc gamma receptor III (Fc _Y RIII). |
| | | 48. | The method of claim 44 wherein step (b) comprises determining binding of the |
| 20 | | variant Fc reg | ion to at least two different FcRs. |
| 30 | 20 | 49. | The method of claim 48 wherein the Fc receptors include human Fc gamma |
| | | receptor II (Fo | cyRII) and human Fc gamma receptor III (FcyRIII). |
| | | | |
| 35 | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | • |
| | | | |
| 40 | | | • |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| 45 | | | |
| | | | |

wild the

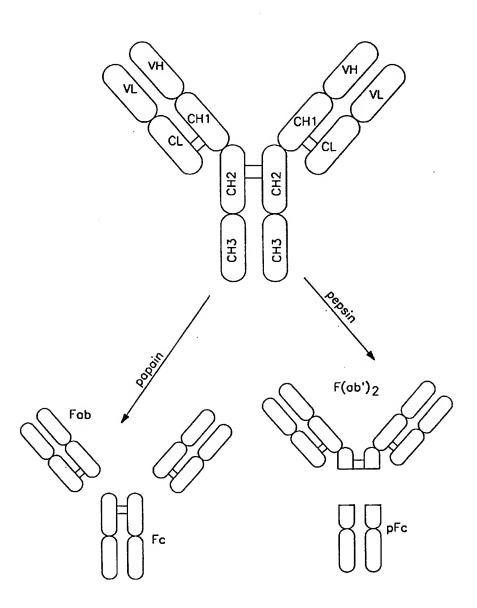


FIG. 1

made and the statement of the same

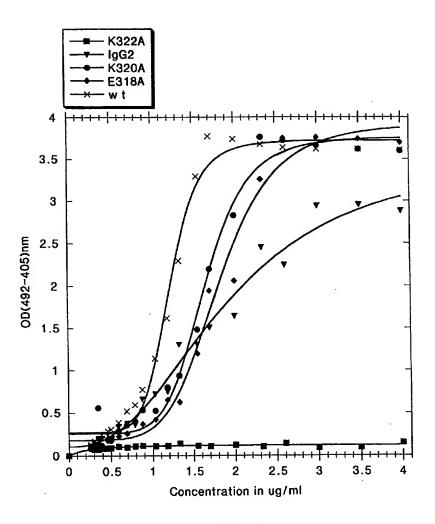


FIG. 2

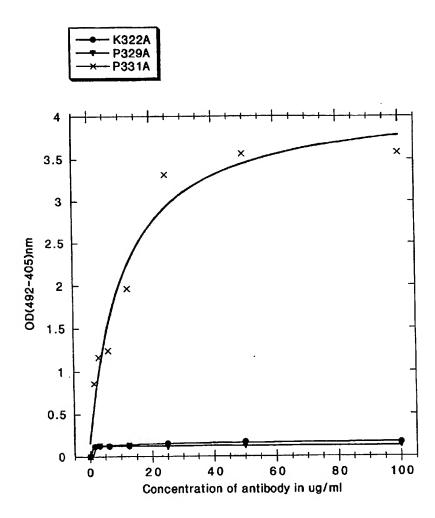


FIG. 3

FIG. 4A (E27) - Light Chain

GVPSRFSGSG SGTASVVCLL THOGLSSPVT IFPPSDEQLK OWKVDNALQS GNSQESVTEQ DSKDSTYSLS STLTLSKADY EKHKVYACEV DIQLTQSPSS LSASVGDRVT ITCRASKPVD GEGDSYMNWY QQKRGKAPKL LIYAASYLES KRTVAAPSVF SLQPEDFATY YCQQSHEDPY TFGQGTKVEI SGIDFILLIS NNFYPREAKV KSFNRGEC

FIG. 4B (E27) - Heavy Chain

SKAKGQPREP IAVEWESNGQ PENNYKTTPP VLDSDGSFFL YSKLTVDKSR PLAPSSKSTS TYICNVNHKP SHEDPEVKFN SCAVSGYSIT SGYSWNWIRQ APGKGLEWVA SIKYSGETKY NPSVKGRITI TVPSSSLGTQ SASTKGPSVF PEVTCWVDV ALPAPIEKTI PKDŢLMISRT TVLHQDWLNG KEYKCKVSNK WGQGTLVTVS SGLYSLSSVV HYFGHWHFAV VHTFPAVLOS GPSVFLFPPK SWNSGALTSG CLVKGFYPSD TAVYYCARGS PPCPAPELLG NSTYRVVSVL WQQGNVFSCS VMHEALHNHY TQKSLSLSPG PKSCDKTHTC EVQLVESGGG LVQPGGSLRL LOMNSLRAED KOYFPEPVTV AKTKPREEQY EMTKNOVSLT SRDDSKNTFY GGTAALGCLV SNTKVDKKVE QVYTLPPSRE WYVDGVEVHIN

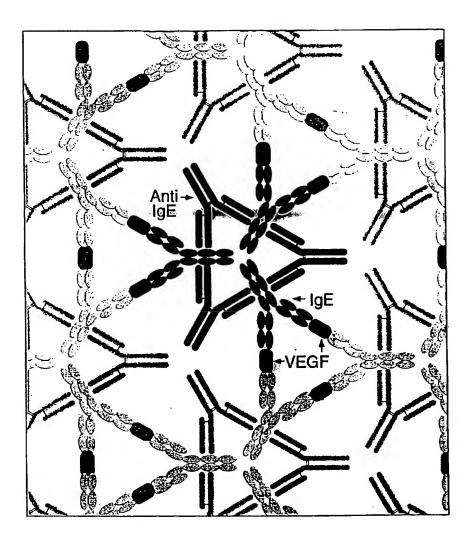


Fig. 5

maniform Wall ... E.s

WO 00/42072

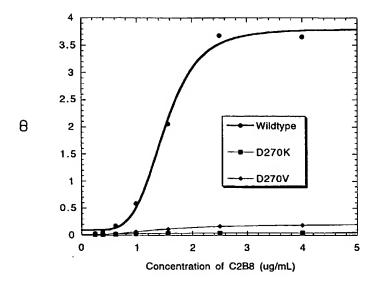


FIG. 6

The state of the state of the state of

.....

A Company of the Comp

WO 00/42072

and amount this conservation

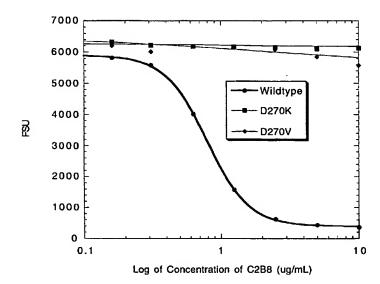


FIG. 7

many and the same of the same

WO 00/42072

8/25

PCT/US00/00973

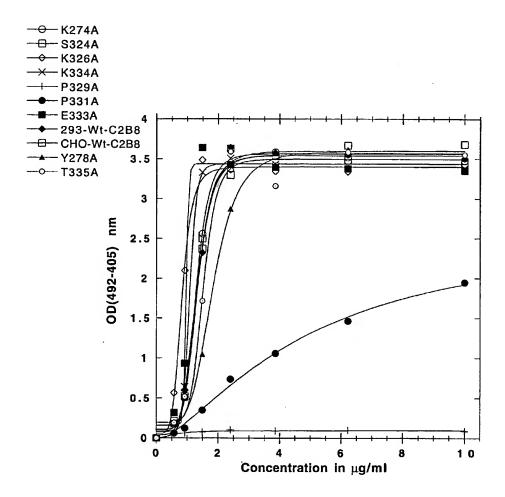


FIG. 8

and the second second second second

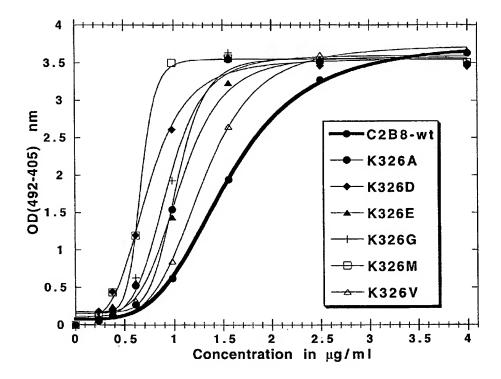


FIG. 9

10/25

PCT/US00/00973

10/35

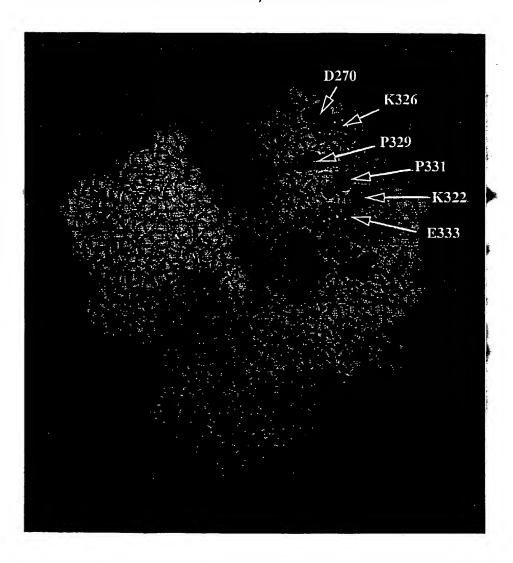


FIG. 10

WO 00/42072 11/25 PCT/US00/00973

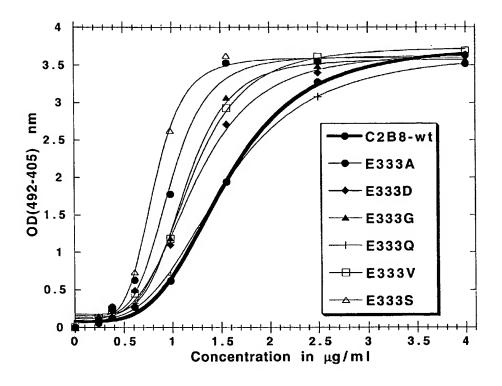


FIG. 11

· Line of the state of

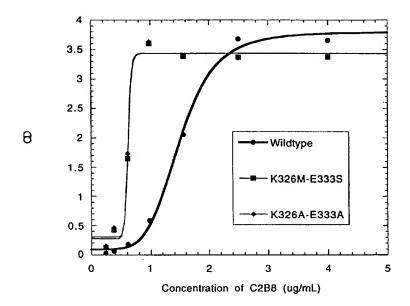


FIG. 12

علا معد عاليًا الأسلام

A CONTRACTOR OF STREET

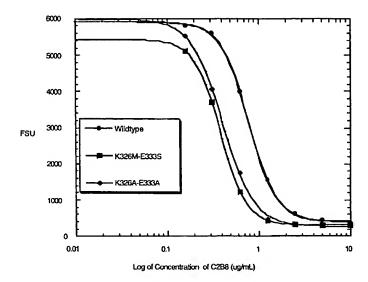


FIG. 13

A Selection in

EC50 of wt-C2B8 = 1.54 EC50 of A327g (C2B8) = 1.08

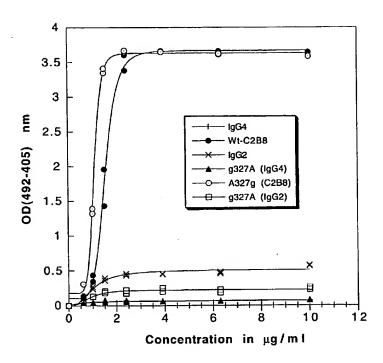
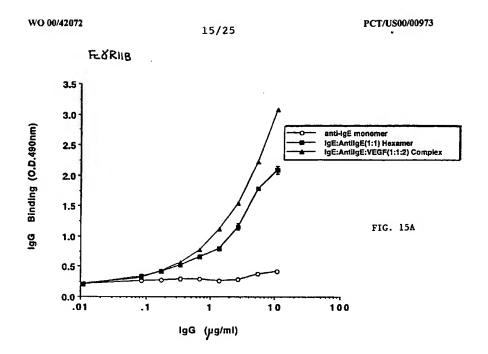
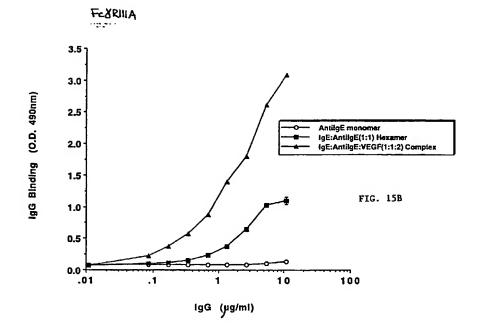


FIG. 14





See Sub Sub

WO 00/42072 PCT/US00/00973 16/25 FC& RIIA 3.5 3.0 Immune Complex Binding (0.D. 490nm) 2.5 VEGF:anti-VEGF (1:1) lgE:anti-lgE (1:1) 2.0

1.5

1.0

0.5

0.0

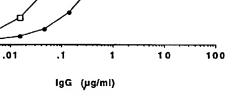
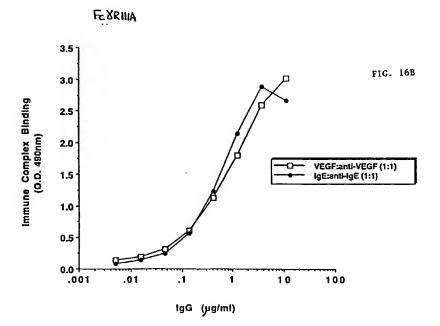


FIG. 16A



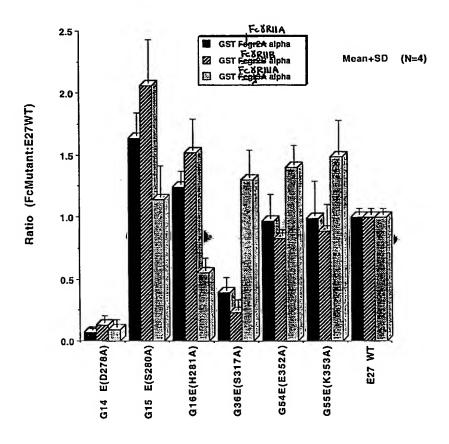
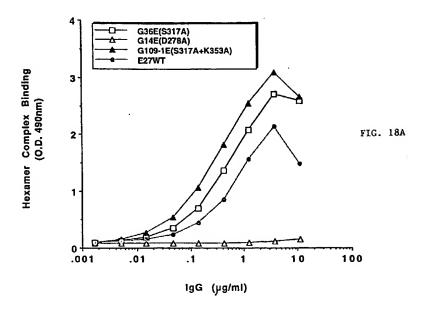
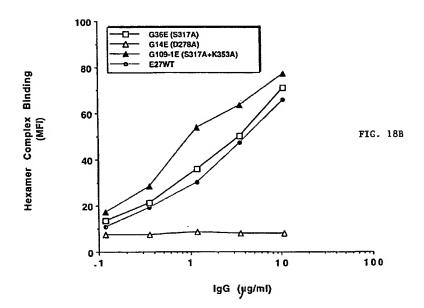


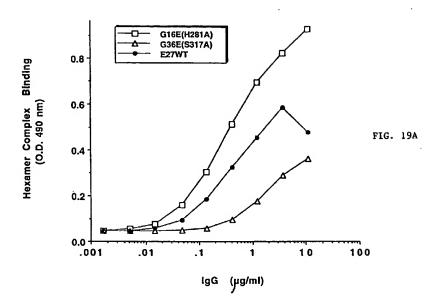
FIG. 17

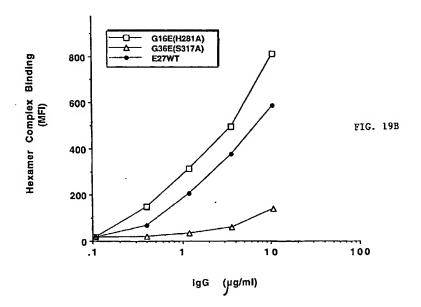
The second secon





The state of the s





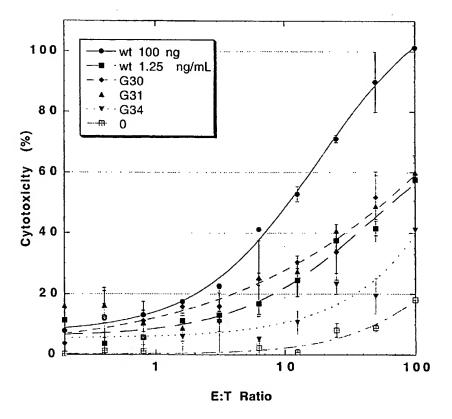


FIG. 20

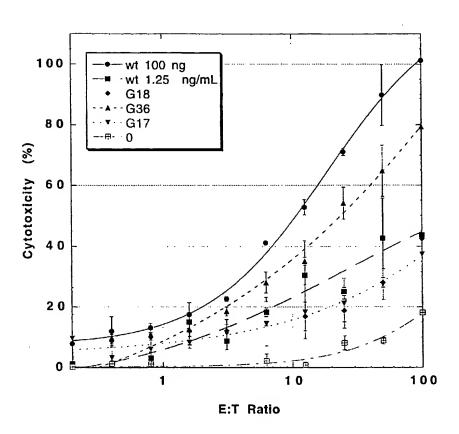


FIG. 21

| humlgG1 humlgG2 humlgG3 humlgG4 murlgG1 murlgG2A murlgG2B murlgG3 | 230 240 250 260 270 PAPELLGGPSVFLFPPKPKDTLMISRTPEVTCVVVDVSHEDPEVKFNWYV PAP-PVAGPSVFLFPPKPKDTLMISRTPEVTCVVVDVSHEDPEVQFNWYV PAPELLGGPSVFLFPPKPKDTLMISRTPEVTCVVVDVSHEDPEVQFKWYV PAPEFLGGPSVFLFPPKPKDTLMISRTPEVTCVVVDVSQEDPEVQFNWYVTVPEVSSVFIFPPKPKDVLTITLTPKVTCVVVDISKDDPEVQFSWFV PAPNLLGGPSVFIFPPKIKDVLMISLSPIVTCVVVDVSEDDPDVQISWFV PAPNLEGGPSVFIFPPNIKDVLMISLTPKVTCVVVDVSEDDPDVQISWFV PPGNILGGPSVFIFPPKPKDALMISLTPKVTCVVVDVSEDDPDVHVSWFV |
|--|---|
| humIgG1 humIgG2 humIgG3 humIgG4 murIgG1 murIgG2A murIgG2B murIgG3 | 280 290 300 310 320 DGVEVHNAKTKPREEQYNSTYRVVSVLTVLHQDWLNGKEYKCKVSNKALP DGVEVHNAKTKPREEQFNSTFRVVSVLTVVHQDWLNGKEYKCKVSNKGLP DGVEVHNAKTKPREEQFNSTFRVVSVLTVLHQDWLNGKEYKCKVSNKGLP DGVEVHNAKTKPREEQFNSTYRVVSVLTVLHQDWLNGKEYKCKVSNKGLP DDVEVHTAQTQPREEQFNSTFRSVSELPIMHQDCLNGKEFKCRVNSAAFP NNVEVHTAQTQTHREDYNSTLRVVSALPIQHQDWMSGKEFKCKVNNKDLP NNVEVHTAQTQTHREDYNSTIRVVSHLPIQHQDWMSGKEFKCKVNNKDLP DNKEVHTAWTOPREAQYNSTFRVVSALPIOHODWMRGKEFKCKVNNKDLP |
| humIgG1 | 330 340 350 360 370 APIEKTISKAKGOPREPOVYTLPPSREEMTKNOVSLTCLVKGFYPSDIAV |
| humIgG2 humIgG3 humIgG4 murIgG1 murIgG2A murIgG2B murIgG3 | D L APIEKTISKTKGQPREPQVYTLPPSREEMTKNQVSLTCLVKGFYPSDIAV APIEKTISKTKGQPREPQVYTLPPSREEMTKNQVSLTCLVKGFYPSDIAV APIEKTISKTKGQPREPQVYTLPPSQEEMTKNQVSLTCLVKGFYPSDIAV SSIEKTISKAKGQPREPQVYTLPPSQEEMTKNQVSLTCLVKGFYPSDIAV APIEKTISKTKGRPKAPQVYTIPPPKEQMAKDKVSLTCMITDFFPEDITV APIERTISKPKGSVRAPQVYVLPPPEEEMTKKQVTLTCMVTDFMPEDIYV SPIERTISKPKGLVRAPQVYTLPPPAEQLSRKDVSLTCLVVGFNPGDISV APIERTISKPKGRAQTPQVYTIPPPREQMSKKKVSLTCLVTNFFSEAISV |
| humIgG1 humIgG2 humIgG3 humIgG4 murIgG1 murIgG2A murIgG2B murIgG3 | 380 390 400 410 420 EWESNGQPENNYKTTPPVLDSDGSFFLYSKLTVDKSRWQQGNVFSCSVMH EWESNGQPENNYKTTPPMLDSDGSFFLYSKLTVDKSRWQQGNVFSCSVMH EWESSGQPENNYNTTPPMLDSDGSFFLYSKLTVDKSRWQQGNVFSCSVMH EWZSNGQPENNYKTTPPVLDSDGSFFLYSKLTVDKSRWQEGNVFSCSVMH EWQWNGQPAENYKNTQPIMDTDGSYFVYSKLNVQKSNWEAGNTFTCSVLH EWTNNGKTELNYKNTEPVLDSDGSYFMYSKLRVEKKNWVERNSYSCSVVH EWTSNGHTEENYKDTAPVLDSDGSYFIYSKLNMKTSKWEKTDSFSCNVRH EWERNGELEQDYKNTPPILDSDGTYFLYSKLTVDTDSWLQGEIFTCSVVH |
| humIgG1 humIgG2 humIgG3 humIgG4 murIgG1 murIgG2A murIgG2B murIgG3 | 430 440 EALHNHYTQKSLSLSPGK EALHNHYTQKSLSLSPGK EALHNRFTQKSLSLSPGK EALHNHYTQKSLSLSPGK EALHNHYTQKSLSLSLGK EGLHNHHTEKSLSHSPGK EGLHNHHTKSFSRTPGK EGLKNYYLKKTISRSPGK EALHNHHTQKNLSRSPGK |

23/25

PCT/US00/00973

Percent Identity Among Fc Sequences

| | 1. | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 |
|-----------------------------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| humIgG1 | - | 94 | 94 | 94 | 64 | 66 | 63 | 68 |
| 2. humIgG2 | | _ | 93 | 92 | 65 | 63 | 60 | 67 |
| 3. humIgG3 | | | - | 91 | 64 | 64 | 61 | 67 |
| 4. humIgG4 | | | | - | 62 | 64 | 61 | 64 |
| 5. murIgG1 | | | | | _ | 65 | 61 | 67 |
| 6. murIgG2A | | | | | | - | 77 | 70 |
| 7. murIgG2B | | | | | | | _ | 68 |
| 8 murTaG3 | | | | | | | | _ |

FIG. 22B

. . South Sale and Sale .

WO 00/42072 24/25 PCT/US00/00973

| | 230 | 240 | 250 | 260 | 270 | |
|------------|---------|------------|------------|-------------|---------------|-------|
| hum1qG1 | PAPELLG | GPSVFLFPP | KPKDTLMIS | RTPEVTCVVVI | DVSHEDPEVKFNV | VYV |
| humIgG2 | | | | | DVSHEDPEVQFNV | |
| humIqG3 | | | | | DVSHEDPEVQFK | |
| humIqG4 | | | | | DVSQEDPEVQFNV | |
| mum1gG4 | PAPERLO | GPSVFLFPP | VEVDITUID. | KIPEVICVV | P + + + | 114 |
| | *** | | | | • • | |
| | | | 222 | 210 | 320 | |
| | 280 | 290 | 300 | 310 | | |
| humIgG1 | | | | | NGKEYKCKVSNK | |
| humIgG2 | | | | | NGKEYKCKVSNKO | |
| humIgG3 | | | | | NGKEYKCKVSNK | |
| humIgG4 | DGVEVHN | IAKTKPREEQ | FNSTYRVVS | VLTVLHQDWL: | NGKEYKCKVSNKO | 3LP |
| | | | * * | * | | ۲ |
| | | | | | | |
| | 330 | 340 | 350 | 360 | 370 | |
| humIqG1 | APIEKTI | SKAKGOPRE | POVYTLPPS | REEMTKNOVS | LTCLVKGFYPSD: | LAV |
| _ | | ~ | ~ | D L | | |
| humIgG2 | APIEKTI | SKTKGOPRE | POVYTLPPS | REEMTKNOVS | LTCLVKGFYPSD: | VAI |
| humIqG3 | | | | | LTCLVKGFYPSD | |
| humIqG4 | | | | | LTCLVKGFYPSD | |
| 1141111904 | ** | * | rgviinri | * | HICETICE ILOD | |
| | | | | | | |
| | 380 | 390 | 400 | 410 | 420 | |
| humIqG1 | | | | | SRWQQGNVFSCS | JMILI |
| humIqG2 | | | | | SRWQQGNVFSCS' | |
| | | | | | | |
| humIgG3 | | | | | SRWQQGNIFSCS | |
| humIgG4 | EWESNG | SPENNAKLLE | PVLDSDGSF | FLYSRLIVDK | SRWQEGNVFSCS | V MIH |
| | * | • | * | * | * * | |
| | | | | | | |
| | 430 | 440 | • | | | |
| humIgG1 | | YTQKSLSLSF | | | | |
| humIgG2 | | YTQKSLSLSF | | | | |
| humIgG3 | | FTQKSLSLSI | | | | |
| humIgG4 | EALHNH | YTQKSLSLSI | .GK | | | |
| _ | + - | | • | | | |

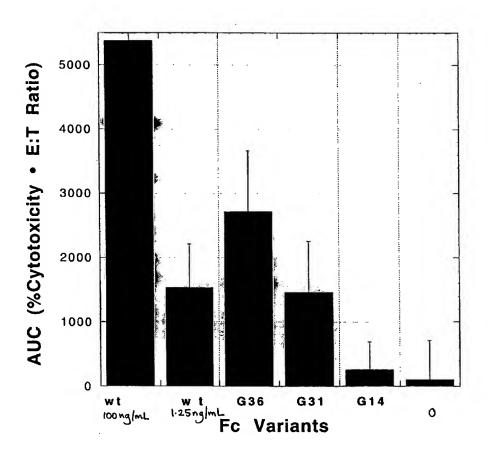


FIG. 24

Sequence Listing

<110> Genentech, Inc. <120> Polypeptide Variants with Altered Effector Function <130> P1726R1PCT <141> 2000-01-14 <150> US 60/116,023 <151> 1999-01-15 <160> 11 <210> 1 <211> 218 <212> PRT <213> Artificial Sequence 10 <221> Artificial Sequence <222> 1-218 <223> Sequence is completely synthesized <400> 1 Asp Ile Gln Leu Thr Gln Ser Pro Ser Ser Leu Ser Ala Ser Val Gly Asp Arg Val Thr Ile Thr Cys Arg Ala Ser Lys Pro Val Asp $20 \\ 25 \\ 30$ 20 Gly Glu Gly Asp Ser Tyr Met Asn Trp Tyr Gln Gln Lys Pro Gly Lys Ala Pro Lys Leu Leu Ile Tyr Ala Ala Ser Tyr Leu Glu Ser 50 55 6025 Gly Val Pro Ser Arg Phe Ser Gly Ser Gly Ser Gly Thr Asp Phe
65 70 75 Thr Leu Thr Ile Ser Ser Leu Gln Pro Glu Asp Phe Ala Thr Tyr 80 $\,$ 85 $\,$ 90 30 Tyr Cys Gln Gln Ser His Glu Asp Pro Tyr Thr Phe Gly Gln Gly 95 100 105 Thr Lys Val Glu Ile Lys Arg Thr Val Ala Ala Pro Ser Val Phe 110 $$ 115 $$ 120 Ile Phe Pro Pro Ser Asp Glu Gln Leu Lys Ser Gly Thr Ala Ser 125 $$ 130 $$ 135 35 Val Val Cys Leu Leu Asn Asn Phe Tyr Pro Arg Glu Ala Lys Val 140 145 150Gln Trp Lys Val Asp Asn Ala Leu Gln Ser Gly Asn Ser Gln Glu 155 160 160 40 Ser Val Thr Glu Gln Asp Ser Lys Asp Ser Thr Tyr Ser Leu Ser

- Alle I Allenda Albania

Tyr Ala Cys Glu Val Thr His Gln Gly Leu Ser Ser Pro Val Thr 200 205 210

Lys Ser Phe Asn Arg Gly Glu Cys 215 218

5 <210> 2 <211> 451 <212> PRT

35

<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>
.0 <221> Artificial Sequence
 <222> 1-451

<223> Sequence is completely synthesized <400> 2 Glu Val Gln Leu Val Glu Ser Gly Gly Gly Leu Val Gln Pro Gly 1 5 10 15 15 Gly Ser Leu Arg Leu Ser Cys Ala Val Ser Gly Tyr Ser Ile Thr $20 \\ 25 \\ 30$ Ser Gly Tyr Ser Trp Asn Trp Ile Arg Gln Ala Pro Gly Lys Gly 35 40 45Leu Glu Trp Val Ala Ser Ile Lys Tyr Ser Gly Glu Thr Lys Tyr 50 6020 Asn Pro Ser Val Lys Gly Arg IIe Thr Ile Ser Arg Asp Asp Ser 65 70 75Lys Asn Thr Phe Tyr Leu Gln Met Asn Ser Leu Arg Ala Glu Asp $80 \\ 80 \\ 85 \\ 90$ 25 Thr Ala Val Tyr Tyr Cys Ala Arg Gly Ser His Tyr Phe Gly His 95 $$100\ \ \, 105$ Trp His Phe Ala Val Trp Gly Gln Gly Thr Leu Val Thr Val Ser 110 115 120Ser Ala Ser Thr Lys Gly Pro Ser Val Phe Pro Leu Ala Pro Ser 125 $$ 130 $$ 135 30 Ser Lys Ser Thr Ser Gly Gly Thr Ala Ala Leu Gly Cys Leu Val 140 145 150

Lys Asp Tyr Phe Pro Glu Pro Val Thr Val Ser Trp Asn Ser Gly 165

Ala Leu Thr Ser Gly Val His Thr Phe Pro Ala Val Leu Gln Ser 170

180

Ser Gly Leu Tyr Ser Leu Ser Ser Val Val Thr Val Pro Ser Ser 185 190 195

40 Ser Leu Gly Thr Gln Thr Tyr Ile Cys Asn Val Asn His Lys Pro 210

Ser Asn Thr Lys Val Asp Lys Lys Val Glu Pro Lys Ser Cys Asp 225

Lys Thr His Thr Cys Pro Pro Cys Pro Ala Pro Glu Leu Leu Gly 45 230 235 240

| | Gly | Pro | Ser | Val | Phe 245 | Leu | Phe | Pro | Pro | Lys 250 | Pro | Lys | Asp | Thr | Leu 255 |
|----|------------------------------|------------|-----|------|------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|------------|
| | Met | Ile | Ser | Arg | Thr 260 | Pro | Glu | Val | Thr | Cys 265 | Val | Val | Val | Asp | Val 270 |
| 5 | Ser | His | Glu | Asp | Pro 275 | Glu | Val | Lys | Phe | Asn 280 | Trp | Tyr | Val | Asp | Gly 285 |
| | Val | Glu | Val | His | Asn 290 | Ala | Lys | Thr | Lys | Pro 295 | Arg | Glu | Glu | Gln | Tyr 300 |
| 10 | Asn | Ser | Thr | Tyr | Arg 305 | Val | Val | Ser | Val | Leu 310 | Thr | Val | Leu | His | Gln 315 |
| | Asp | Trp | Leu | Asn | Gly 320 | Lys | Glu | Tyr | Lys | Cys 325 | Lys | Val | Ser | Asn | Lys 330 |
| | Ala | Leu | Pro | Ala | Pro 335 | Ile | Glu | Lys | Thr | Ile 340 | Ser | Lys | Ala | Lys | Gly 345 |
| 15 | Gln | Pro | Arg | Glu | Pro 350 | Gln | Va1 | Tyr | Thr | Leu 355 | Pro | Pro | Ser | Arg | Glu 360 |
| | Glu | Met | Thr | Lys | Asn 365 | Gln | Val | Ser | Leu | Thr 370 | Cys | Leu | Val | Lys | Gly 375 |
| 20 | Phe | Tyr | Pro | Ser | Asp 380 | Ile | Ala | Val | Glu | Trp 385 | Glu | Ser | Asn | Gly | Gln 390 |
| | Pro | Glu | Asn | Asn | Tyr 395 | Lys | Thr | Thr | Pro | Pro 400 | Val | Leu | Asp | Ser | Asp 405 |
| | Gly | Ser | Phe | Phe | Leu 410 | Tyr | Ser | Lys | Leu | Thr 415 | Val | Asp | Lys | Ser | Arg 420 |
| 25 | Trp | Gln | Gln | Gly | Asn 425 | Val | Phe | Ser | Суз | Ser 430 | Val | Met | His | Glu | Ala 435 |
| | Leu | His | Asn | His | Tyr 440 | Thr | Gln | Lys | Ser | Leu 445 | Ser | Leu | Ser | Pro | Gly 450 |
| 30 | Lys 451 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | <210 <211 <212 <213 | 218 PRT | : | pier | ıs | | | | | | | | | | |
| 35 | <400> Pro 1 | | Pro | Glu | Leu 5 | Leu | Gly | Gly | Pro | Ser 10 | Val | Phe | Leu | Phe | Pro 15 |
| | Pro | Lys | Pro | Lys | Asp 20 | Thr | Leu | Met | Ile | Ser 25 | Arg | Thr | Pro | Glu | Val 30 |
| 40 | Thr | Cys | Val | Val | Val 35 | Asp | Val | Ser | His | Glu 40 | Asp | Pro | Glu | Val | Lys 45 |
| | Phe | Asn | Trp | Tyr | Val 50 | Asp | Gly | Val | Glu | Val 55 | His | Asn | Ala | Lys | Thr 60 |
| | Lys | Pro | Arg | Glu | Glu | Gln | Tyr | Asn | Ser | Thr | Tyr | Arg | Val | Val | Ser |

| | | | | | 65 | | | | | 70 | | | | | 75 |
|----|----------------------------------|----------------|-----|-------|------------|-----|-----|------------|-----|------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|------------|
| | Val | Leu | Thr | Val | Leu 80 | His | Gln | Asp | Trp | Leu 85 | Asn | Gly | Lys | Glu | Tyr 90 |
| 5 | Lys | Суз | Lys | Val | Ser 95 | Asn | Lys | Ala | Leu | Pro 100 | Ala | Pro | Ile | Glu | Lys 105 |
| | Thr | Ile | Ser | Lys | Ala 110 | Lys | Gly | Gln | Pro | Arg 115 | Glu | Pro | Gln | Val | Tyr 120 |
| | Thr | Leu | Pro | Pro | Ser 125 | Arg | Glu | Glu | Met | Thr 130 | Lys | Asn | Gln | Val | Ser 135 |
| 10 | Leu | Thr | Cys | Leu | Val 140 | Lys | Gly | Phe | Tyr | Pro 145 | Ser | Asp | Ile | Ala | Val 150 |
| | Glu | Trp | Glu | Ser | Asn 155 | Gly | Gln | Pro | Glu | Asn 160 | Asn | Tyr | Lys | Thr | Thr 165 |
| 15 | Pro | Pro | Val | Leu | Asp 170 | Ser | Asp | Gly | Ser | Phe 175 | Phe | Leu | Tyr | Ser | Lys 180 |
| | Leu | Thr | Val | Asp | Lys 185 | Ser | Arg | Trp | Gln | Gln 190 | Gly | Asn | Val | Phe | Ser 195 |
| | Cys | Ser | Val | Met | His 200 | Glu | Ala | Leu | His | Asn 205 | His | Tyr | Thr | Gln | Lys 210 |
| 20 | Ser | Leu | Ser | Leu | Ser 215 | Pro | Gly | Lys 218 | | | | | | | |
| 25 | <210: <211: <212: <213: | > 218 > PRT | r | apier | ns | | | | | | | | | | |
| | <4000 Pro 1 | | Pro | Glu | Leu 5 | Leu | Gly | Gly | Pro | Ser 10 | Val | Phe | Leu | Phe | Pro 15 |
| 30 | Pro | Lys | Pro | Lys | Asp 20 | Thr | Leu | Met | Ile | Ser 25 | Arg | Thr | Pro | Glu | Val 30 |
| | Thr | Cys | Val | Val | Va1 35 | Asp | Val | Ser | His | Glu 40 | qeA | Pro | Glu | Val | Lys 45 |
| | Phe | Asn | Trp | Tyr | Val 50 | Asp | Gly | Val | Glu | Val 55 | His | Asn | Ala | Lys | Thr 60 |
| 35 | Lys | Pro | Arg | Glu | Glu 65 | Gln | Tyr | Asn | Ser | Thr 70 | Tyr | Arg | Val | Val | Ser 75 |
| | Val | Leu | Thr | Val | Leu 80 | His | Gln | Asp | Trp | Leu 85 | Asn | Gly | Lys | Glu | Tyr 90 |
| 40 | Lys | Cys | Lys | Val | Ser 95 | Asn | Lys | Ala | Leu | Pro 100 | Ala | Pro | Ile | Glu | Lys 105 |
| | Thr | Ile | Ser | Lys | Ala 110 | Lys | Gly | Gln | Pro | Arg 115 | Glu | Pro | Gln | Val | Tyr 120 |
| | Thr | Leu | Pro | Pro | Ser 125 | Arg | Asp | Glu | | Thr 130 | | Asn | Gln | Val | Ser 135 |

| | Leu | Thr | Cys | Leu | Val 140 | Lys | Gly | Phe | Tyr | Pro 145 | Ser | Asp | Ile | Ala | Val 150 |
|----|----------------------------------|----------------|-----|------|------------|-----|-----|------------|-----|------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|------------|
| | Glu | Trp | Glu | Ser | Asn 155 | Gly | Gln | Pro | Glu | Asn 160 | Asn | Tyr | Lys | Thr | Thr 165 |
| 5 | Pro | Pro | Val | Leu | Asp 170 | Ser | Asp | Gly | Ser | Phe 175 | Phe | Leu | Tyr | Ser | Lys 180 |
| | Leu | Thr | Val | Asp | Lys 185 | Ser | Arg | Trp | Gln | Gln 190 | Gly | Asn | Val | Phe | Ser 195 |
| 10 | Cys | Ser | Val | Met | His 200 | Glu | Ala | Leu | His | Asn 205 | His | Tyr | Thr | Gln | Lys 210 |
| | Ser | Leu | Ser | Leu | Ser 215 | Pro | Gly | Lys 218 | | | | | | | |
| 15 | <210: <211: <212: <213: | > 217 > PR7 | r | apie | ns | | | | | | | | | | |
| | <400 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Pro 1 | Ala | Pro | Pro | Val 5 | Ala | GlĀ | Pro | Ser | Val 10 | Phe | Leu | Phe | Pro | Pro 15 |
| 20 | Lys | Pro | Lys | Asp | Thr 20 | Leu | Met | Ile | Ser | Arg 25 | Thr | Pro | Glu | Val | Thr 30 |
| | Cys | Val | Val | Val | Asp 35 | Val | Ser | His | Glu | Asp 40 | Pro | Glu | Val | Gln | Phe 45 |
| 25 | Asn | Trp | Tyr | Val | Asp 50 | Gly | Val | Glu | Val | His 55 | Asn | Ala | Lys | Thr | Lys 60 |
| | Pro | Arg | Glu | Glu | Gln 65 | Phe | Asn | Ser | Thr | Phe 70 | Arg | Val | Val | Ser | Val 75 |
| | Leu | Thr | Val | Val | His EO | Gln | Asp | Trp | Leu | Asn 85 | Gly | Lys | Glu | Tyr | Lys 90 |
| 30 | Cys | Lys | Val | Ser | Asn 95 | Lys | Gly | Leu | Pro | Ala 100 | Pro | Ile | G1u | Lys | Thr 105 |
| | Ile | Ser | Lys | Thr | Lys 110 | Gly | Gln | Pro | Arg | Glu 115 | Pro | Gln | Val | Tyr | Thr 120 |
| 35 | Leu | Pro | Pro | Ser | Arg 125 | Glu | Glu | Met | Thr | Lys 130 | Asn | Gln | Val | Ser | Leu 135 |
| | Thr | Cys | Leu | Val | Lys 140 | Gly | Phe | Tyr | Pro | Ser 145 | Asp | Ile | Ala | Val | Glu 150 |
| | Trp | Glu | Ser | Asn | Gly 155 | Gln | Pro | Glu | Asn | Asn 160 | Tyr | Lys | Thr | Thr | Pro 165 |
| 40 | Pro | Met | Leu | Asp | Ser 170 | Asp | Gly | Ser | Phe | Phe 175 | Leu | Tyr | Ser | Lys | Leu 180 |
| | Thr | Val | Asp | Lys | Ser 185 | Arg | Trp | Gln | Gln | Gly 190 | Asn | Val | Phe | Ser | Суз 195 |
| | Ser | Val | Met | His | Glu | Ala | Leu | His | Asn | His | Tyr | Thr | Gln | Lys | Ser |

200 205 210

Leu Ser Leu Ser Pro Gly Lys 215 217

<210> 6
5 <211> 218
<212> PRT
<213> homo sapien

<213> homo sapiens Pro Ala Pro Glu Leu Leu Gly Gly Pro Ser Val Phe Leu Phe Pro 1 5 10 15 10 Pro Lys Pro Lys Asp Thr Leu Met Ile Ser Arg Thr Pro Glu Val $20 \hspace{1cm} 25 \hspace{1cm} 30$ Thr Cys Val Val Val Asp Val Ser His Glu Asp Pro Glu Val Gln \$35\$Phe Lys Trp Tyr Val Asp Gly Val Glu Val His Asn Ala Lys Thr $50 \ \ 55 \ \ 60$ 15 Val Leu Thr Val Leu His Gln Asp Trp Leu Asn Gly Lys Glu Tyr 80 $\,$ 85 $\,$ 90 $\,$ 20 Lys Cys Lys Val Ser Asn Lys Ala Leu Pro Ala Pro Ile Glu Lys 95 100 105 Thr Ile Ser Lys Thr Lys Gly Gln Pro Arg Glu Pro Gln Val Tyr 110 $\,$ 115 $\,$ 120 Thr Leu Pro Pro Ser Arg Glu Glu Met Thr Lys Asn Gln Val Ser 125 $$ 130 $$ 135 25 Leu Thr Cys Leu Val Lys Gly Phe Tyr Pro Ser Asp Ile Ala Val 140 145 150 Glu Trp Glu Ser Ser Gly Gln Pro Glu Asn Asn Tyr Asn Thr Thr 155 $160\,$ 30

Pro Pro Met Leu Asp Ser Asp Gly Ser Phe Phe Leu Tyr Ser Lys
170 175 180

Leu Thr Val Asp Lys Ser Arg Trp Gln Gln Gly Asn Ile Phe Ser
185 190 195

35 Cys Ser Val Met His Glu Ala Leu His Asn Arg Phe Thr Gln Lys 200 205 210

Ser Leu Ser Leu Ser Pro Gly Lys 215 218

<400> 7
 Pro Ala Pro Glu Phe Leu Gly Gly Pro Ser Val Phe Leu Phe Pro
45 1 5 10 15

Pro Lys Pro Lys Asp Thr Leu Met Ile Ser Arg Thr Pro Glu Val 20 25 30 Thr Cys Val Val Val Asp Val Ser Gln Glu Asp Pro Glu Val Gln 35 40 Phe Asn Trp Tyr Val Asp Gly Val Glu Val His Asn Ala Lys Thr 50 60Lys Pro Arg Glu Glu Gln Phe Asn Ser Thr Tyr Arg Val Val Ser $65 \hspace{1.5cm} 70 \hspace{1.5cm} 75$ Val Leu Thr Val Leu His Gln Asp Trp Leu Asn Gly Lys Glu Tyr 80 85 90 10 Lys Cys Lys Val Ser Asn Lys Gly Leu Pro Ser Ser Ile Glu Lys 95 100 105 Thr Ile Ser Lys Ala Lys Gly Gln Pro Arg Glu Pro Gln Val Tyr 110 115 120 Thr Leu Pro Pro Ser Gln Glu Glu Met Thr Lys Asn Gln Val Ser 125 $$ 130 $$ 135 15 Leu Thr Cys Leu Val Lys Gly Phe Tyr Pro Ser Asp Ile Ala Val 140 $\,$ 145 $\,$ 150 Glu Trp Glx Ser Asn Gly Gln Pro Glu Asn Asn Tyr Lys Thr Thr 155 160 Thr Thr 16520 Pro Pro Val Leu Asp Ser Asp Gly Ser Phe Phe Leu Tyr Ser Arg 170 175 180Leu Thr Val Asp Lys Ser Arg Trp Gln Glu Gly Asn Val Phe Ser 185 $$190\$ Cys Ser Val Met His Glu Ala Leu His Asn His Tyr Thr Gln Lys $200 \hspace{1.5cm} 205 \hspace{1.5cm} 210$ 25 Ser Leu Ser Leu Ser Leu Gly Lys 215 218 <210> 8 <211> 215 30 <213> Mus musculus <400> B Thr Val Pro Glu Val Ser Ser Val Phe Ile Phe Pro Pro Lys Pro 1 5 10 15 35 Lys Asp Val Leu Thr Ile Thr Leu Thr Pro Lys Val Thr Cys Val Val Val Asp Ile Ser Lys Asp Asp Pro Glu Val Gln Phe Ser Trp 35 40 4540 Phe Val Asp Asp Val Glu Val His Thr Ala Gln Thr Gln Pro Arg Glu Glu Gln Phe Asn Ser Thr Phe Arg Ser Val Ser Glu Leu Pro Ile Met His Gln Asp Cys Leu Asn Gly Lys Glu Phe Lys Cys Arg

PCT



INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification: C07K 16/00, A61K 39/395, C07K 16/22, C07K 16/28, C12N 5/10, C12N 15/13, C12N 15/85, G01N 33/577, G01N 33/68

(11) International Publication Number:

WO 00/42072

(43) International Publication Date:

20 July 2000 (20.07.2000)

(21) International Application Number:

PCT/US00/00973

(22) International Filing Date:

14 January 2000 (14.01.2000)

Published

(30) Priority Data:

60/116,023

15 January 1999 (15.01.1999) US

(60) Parent Application or Grant

GENENTECH, INC. [/]; (). PRESTA, Leonard, G. [/];

(). LEE, Wendy, M.; ().

(54) Title: POLYPEPTIDE VARIANTS WITH ALTERED EFFECTOR FUNCTION

(54) Titre: VARIANTS POLYPEPTIDIQUES AYANT UNE FONCTION EFFECTRICE ALTEREE

(57) Abstract

The present invention concerns polypeptides comprising a variant Fc region. More particularly, the present invention concerns Fc region-containing polypeptides that have altered effector function as a consequence of one or more amino acid modifications in the Fc region thereof.

(57) Abrégé

La présente invention concerne des polypeptides comprenant un fragment Fc variant. L'invention concerne plus particulièrement des polypeptides à fragment Fc comportant une fonction effectrice altérée résultant d'une ou plusieurs modifications des acides aminés dans ledit fragment Fc.

(12) INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization International Bureau



(43) International Publication Date 20 July 2000 (20.07.2000)

(10) International Publication Number WO 00/42072 A3

- (51) International Patent Classification7: C07K 16/00, A61K 39/395, C12N 15/13, 15/85, 5/10, G01N 33/68, 33/577, C07K 16/22 // 16/28
- (21) International Application Number: PCT/US00/00973
- (22) International Filing Date: 14 January 2000 (14.01.2000)
- (25) Filing Language:

English

(26) Publication Language:

English

(30) Priority Data: 60/116,023

15 January 1999 (15.01.1999)

- (71) Applicant: GENENTECH, INC. [US/US]; 1 DNA Way, South San Francisco, CA 94080-4990 (US).
- (72) Inventor: PRESTA, Leonard, G.; 1900 Gough Street, #206, San Francisco, CA 94109 (US).
- (74) Agents: LEE, Wendy, M. et al.; Genentech, Inc., 1 DNA Way, South San Francisco, CA 94080-4990 (US).

- (81) Designated States (national): AE, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN. IS. JP. KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, UZ, VN, YU, ZA, ZW.
- (84) Designated States (regional): ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, Cl, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

Published:

- With international search report.
- (88) Date of publication of the international search report: 30 November 2000

For two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guidance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the beginning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette.

(54) Title: POLYPEPTIDE VARIANTS WITH ALTERED EFFECTOR FUNCTION

(57) Abstract: The present invention concerns polypeptides comprising a variant Fc region. More particularly, the present invention concerns Fc region-containing polypeptides that have altered effector function as a consequence of one or more amino acid modifications in the Fc region thereof.

Int tional Application No PCT/US 00/00973

| . 0: :55 | COLTION OF CUS ISSESSES | | | | |
|---|---|--|-------------------------|--|--|
| IPC 7 | FICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER C07K16/00 A61K G01N33/68 G01N | 39/395 33/577 | C12N15/13 C07K16/22 | C12N15/85 //C07K16/28 | C12N5/10 |
| According | o International Patent Classification (I | PC) or to both | national classification | and tPC | |
| | SEARCHED | | | ······································ | |
| Minimum d IPC 7 | commentation searched (classification CO7K | system follow | ed by classification sy | rbois) | |
| Documenta | tion searched other than minimum do | cumentation to | the extent that such o | ocuments are included in th | ne fields searched |
| Electronic o | ata base consulted during the interns | itional search (| name of data base an | 1. where practical, search to | erms used) |
| BIOSIS | , EPO-Internal, PAJ | | | | |
| C. DOCUM | ENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEV | ANT | | | |
| Category · | Citation of document, with indication | , where appro | priate of the relevant | passages | Relevant to claim No. |
| X | US 5 624 821 A (V 29 April 1997 (19 column 1, line 44 column 5, line 53 column 6, line 38 claims | 97-04-29 -colum -65 | 9) | | 1-49 |
| χ Furti | er documents are listed in the continu | ation of box C | X | Patent family members | are listed in annex. |
| | egories of cited documents : | | | · | |
| "A" docume consider of filing de "L" docume which citation "O" docume other r | or it defining the general state of the an ared to be of particular relevance ocument but published on or after the ste it which may throw doubts on priority sictled to establish the publication dat or other special reason (as specified int referring to an oral disclosure, use, | international claimis) or of another) exhibition or | "X" dı Y" dı | or pronty date and not in co- tried to understand the princ nvention. Cument of particular releval cannot be considered novel involve an inventive step who cument of particular releval annot be considered to invo- tocument is combined with in | or cannot be considered to en the document is taken alone |
| later th | an the priority date claimed ctual completion of the international s | | | cument member of the sam | |
| | July 2000 | ca(UI) | | 25/07/2000 | nional search report |
| | aiting address of the ISA European Patent Office, P.S. 5818 NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk | Palentiaan 2 | A | uthorized officer | |
| | Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040. Tx. 31 6: Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016 | 1 epo ni. | | Covone. M | |

Form PCT/ISA/210 (second sheet) (July 1992)

In: itional Application No PCT/US 00/00973

| | ation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT | |
|------------|--|----------------------------------|
| Category · | Citation of document, with indication where appropriate, of the relevant passages | Relevant to daim No. |
| х | SARMAY G ET AL: "MAPPING AND COMPARISON OF THE INTERACTION SITES ON THE FC REGION OF IGG RESPONSIBLE FOR TRIGGERING ANTIBODY DEPENDENT CELLULAR CYTOTOXICITY ADCC THROUGH DIFFERENT TYPES OF HUMAN FC-GAMMA RECEPTOR" MOLECULAR IMMUNOLOGY, vol. 29, no. 5, 1992, pages 633-639, XP000915240 ISSN: 0161-5890 abstract figure 3 page 634, right-hand column, paragraphs 3, 4 page 637, left-hand column, line 15-18 page 638, left-hand column, paragraph 4 -right-hand column, paragraph 2 | 1-4, 8-10, 38-42, 44-49 |
| X | WO 98 23289 A (GEN HOSPITAL CORP ;UNIV BRANDEIS (US)) 4 June 1998 (1998-06-04) claims 1-8 | 1-4, 8-15, 31-46 |
| X | example 2 GHETIE VICTOR ET AL: "Increasing the serum persistence of an IgG fragment by random mutagenesis." NATURE BIOTECHNOLOGY, vol. 15, no. 7, 1997, pages 637-640, XP000876642 ISSN: 1087-0156 abstract page 637, left-hand column, paragraph 3 page 638, left-hand column, paragraph 1 page 639, right-hand column, paragraph 5 figure 2: table 1 | 1-4, 8-15, 31-46 |
| x | MEDESAN CORNELIU ET AL: "Comparative studies of rat IgG to further delineate the Fc:FcRn interaction site." EUROPEAN JOURNAL OF IMMUNOLOGY, vol. 28, no. 7, July 1998 (1998-07), pages 2092-2100, XP000915239 ISSN: 0014-2980 abstract page 2095, right-hand column, paragraph 2 -page 2096, left-hand column, paragraph 1 page 2096, right-hand column, paragraph 2 -page 2097, column 2 page 2098, right-hand column, paragraph 3 page 2098, right-hand column, paragraph 2 page 3 | 1-4. 8-15, 31-46 |
| | -/ | |
| | | |
| | | 1 |

Form PCT/ISA/210 (continuation of second sheet) (July 1992)

page 2 of 3

1

Int tional Application No PCT/US 00/00973

| Category | Citation of document, with indication where appropriate, of the relevant passages | Relevant to claim No. |
|----------|--|-----------------------|
| | | |
| X | DATABASE BIOSIS 'Online! BIOSCIENCES INFORMATION SERVICE. PHILADELPHIA, PA, US; 16 December 1997 (1997-12-16) HENRY ALISTAIR J ET AL: "Participation of the N-terminal region of Cepsilon3 in the binding of human IgE to its high-affinity receptor FcepsilonRI." Database accession no. PREV199800070240 XP002142066 abstract & BIOCHEMISTRY, vol. 36, no. 50, 16 December 1997 (1997-12-16), pages 15568-15578, ISSN: 0006-2960 | 1,2 |
| P,X | WO 99 51642 A (GENENTECH INC) 14 October 1999 (1999-10-14) claims; examples 1-3 | 1-49 |
| | · | |
| | | |

Form PCT-ISA/210 (continuation of second sheet) (July 1992)

page 3 of 3

in the same of the

Information on patent family members

Int Itional Application No PCT/US 00/00973

| Patent document cited in search report | | Publication date | | atent family member(s) | Publication date | |
|---|---|------------------|------|---------------------------|---------------------|--|
| US 5624821 | A | 29-04-1997 | AT | 94171 T | 15-09-1993 | |
| | | | AU | 600575 B | 16-08-1990 | |
| | | | AU | 1480388 A | 10-10-1988 | |
| | | | DΕ | 3883899 D | 14-10-1993 | |
| | | | ÐE | 3883899 T | 31-03-1994 | |
| | | | EP | 0307434 A | 22 - 03-1989 | |
| | | | EP | 0351410 A | 24-01-1990 | |
| | | | WO | 8807089 A | 22-09-1988 | |
| | | | WO | 8807054 A | 22-09-1988 | |
| | | | GB | 2209757 A,B | 24-05-1989 | |
| | | | JP | 1502875 T | 05-10-1989 | |
| | | | US | 5648260 A | 15-07-1997 | |
| WO 9823289 | Α | 04-06-1998 | NONE | | | |
| WO 9951642 | A | 14-10-1999 | AU | 3369999 A | 25-10-1999 | |

Form PCT ISA/210 (patent family annex) (July 1992)